

UNITED STATES
NUCLEAR WASTE TECHNICAL REVIEW BOARD

TRANSCRIPT

INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL WORKSHOP ON
DEEP BOREHOLE DISPOSAL OF RADIOACTIVE WASTE

Tuesday

October 20, 2015

Embassy Suites
1250 22nd Street NW
Washington, DC

NWTRB BOARD MEMBERS PRESENT

Rodney C. Ewing, Ph.D., Chairman, NWTRB
Jean Bahr, Ph.D.
Steven Becker, Ph.D.
Susan Brantley, Ph.D.
Allen G. Croff, M.B.A.
Gerald S. Frankel, Ph.D.
Efi Foufoula-Georgiou, Ph.D.
Linda Nozik, Ph.D.
K. L. Peddicord, Ph.D.
Paul J. Turinsky, Ph.D.
Mary Lou Zoback, Ph.D.

NWTRB EXECUTIVE STAFF

Nigel Mote, Executive Director
Debra L. Dickson, Director of Administration

NWTRB SENIOR PROFESSIONAL STAFF

Bret W. Leslie
Roberto T. Pabalan
Daniel S. Metlay
Daniel G. Ogg
Karyn D. Severson

NWTRB ADMINISTRATIVE AND SUPPORT STAFF

Davonya Barnes, Information Systems Specialist
Jayson S. Bright, Systems Administrator
Margaret Butzen, Staff Intern
Linda Coultry, Program Management Specialist
Eva Moore, Program Management Specialist

I N D E XPAGE NO.**Call to Order and Introductory Statement**

Rodney C. Ewing, Ph.D.

Chairman

U.S. Nuclear Waste Technical Review Board 5

Mary Lou Zoback, Ph.D.

U.S. Nuclear Waste Technical Review Board 11

DOE's Strategy for Management and Disposal of Spent Nuclear Fuel and High-Level Radioactive Waste, Including Deep Borehole Disposal of Smaller DOE-Managed Waste Forms

Franklin Orr

Under Secretary for Science and Energy

U.S. Department of Energy. 18

Questions/Discussion 32**DOE's Deep Borehole Disposal Research and Development Program**

Timothy Gunter

Program Manager, Disposal R&D

Office of Used Nuclear Fuel Disposition R&D

U.S. Department of Energy. 39

Questions/Discussion 60**DOE Deep Borehole Field Test: Site Characterization and Design Requirements**

David Sassani

Principal Member of Technical Staff

Ernest Hardin

Distinguished Member of Technical Staff

Sandia National Laboratories

DOE Office of Nuclear Energy Used Nuclear Fuel

Disposition R&D Campaign 80

Questions/Discussion 127

I N D E X
(Continued)

Lunchtime Presentation: International Perspective on Deep Borehole Disposal	
Fergus Gibb	
University of Sheffield, United Kingdom	145
Panel #1 - Experience in Deep Drilling in Crystalline Rocks	
Mary Lou Zoback, NWTRB, Moderator	185
Stephen Hickman, U.S. Geological Survey	187
Claus Chur, CCConsulting, Germany	196
Eric van Oort, University of Texas at Austin.	202
Questions/Discussion.	219
Panel #2 - Emplacement Mode	
Allen Croff, NWTRB, Moderator	237
Wesley Patrick, Southwest Research Institute.	243
Mark MacGlashan, MacGlashan Engineering Consulting.	250
Douglas Minnema, Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board.	260
Ernest Hardin, Sandia National Laboratories	
Questions/Discussion.	268
Panel #3 - Borehole Seals	
Gerald Frankel, NWTRB, Moderator.	279
Paul Bommer, University of Texas.	281
Nick Collier, University of Sheffield, United Kingdom.	289
Roland Pusch, Luleå University of Technology, Sweden.	296
Questions/Discussion.	304
Public Comments	324
Adjourn Day One	330

P R O C E E D I N G S

1

2

8:00 a.m.

3

4

5

6

7

8

EWING: So good morning, and thank you for so promptly sitting down and with the sound of the music. We'll be using the music to signal that it's time to start each of the sessions. So thank you for joining the Nuclear Waste Technical Review Board's Workshop on Deep Borehole Disposal of Radioactive Waste.

9

10

11

12

I'm Rod Ewing. I'm the Chairman of the Board, and I'll be introducing the other Board members in a moment. But first I want to speak briefly about why we are holding this workshop and what we hope to achieve.

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

As many of you know, the Board is an independent federal agency in the Executive branch. We are not part of the U.S. Department of Energy or any other federal agency or organization. The Board was created by the 1987 Amendments to the Nuclear Waste Policy Act in order to perform an ongoing evaluation of the technical and scientific validity of DOE's efforts to implement the Nuclear Waste Policy Act of 1982. We are mandated by statute to report the Board's findings, conclusions, and recommendations to Congress and the Secretary of Energy.

23

24

25

So why are we holding this workshop? As part of our ongoing review of the Department of Energy's activities, the Board has had a long-standing interest in deep borehole

1 disposal. The Board's perspective on this subject has
2 evolved over the years, and we have periodically conveyed the
3 Board's views to the Department of Energy.

4 Most recently, in June of this year, the Board
5 issued a report on the technical basis of the Department of
6 Energy's March announcement that it's going forward with
7 planning for disposal of DOE-managed high-level radioactive
8 waste in a geologic repository that is separate from a
9 repository for commercial waste.

10 DOE's strategy includes maintaining its flexibility
11 to consider the option of disposing of smaller DOE-managed
12 waste forms in deep boreholes rather than in a mined geologic
13 repository. The Department of Energy has identified, as an
14 example, the cesium and strontium capsules at Hanford as
15 among the candidates for this type of disposal.

16 Now that the Department of Energy is investigating
17 deep boreholes as a disposal option for some types of
18 radioactive waste, the Board has decided to hold a meeting
19 focused on this deep borehole strategy. We also thought that
20 the workshop format would allow us to hear not only from DOE
21 and its plans for studying or investigating deep borehole
22 disposal, but also we could hear from experts around the
23 United States and international experts who have experience
24 with this technology.

25 Our objectives in holding the workshops are, first,

1 to identify the technical and scientific issues associated
2 with DOE's research and development program; second, to
3 assess the viability of the deep borehole disposal concept;
4 and, three, to identify technical and scientific issues that
5 might affect DOE's implementation of the disposal of
6 radioactive waste in deep boreholes.

7 Now let me introduce the members of the Board.
8 First, as I've said before, my name is Rod Ewing. I am a
9 professor in the Department of Geological Sciences at
10 Stanford University. As I call the names of the Board
11 members, if you'd just raise your hand so that people might
12 identify you.

13 Jean Bahr is a Professor of Hydrogeology in the
14 Department of Geoscience at the University of Wisconsin-
15 Madison.

16 Steve Becker is a Professor of Community and
17 Environmental Health in the College of Health Sciences at Old
18 Dominion University.

19 Susan Brantley is a Distinguished Professor of
20 Geosciences and Director of the Earth and Environmental
21 Systems Institute at Penn State.

22 Allen Croff is a Nuclear Engineer and an Adjunct
23 Professor in the Department of Civil and Environmental
24 Engineering at Vanderbilt.

25 Efi Foufoula-Georgiou. Efi is the Distinguished

1 McKnight University Professor of Civil Engineering and
2 Director of the National Center for Earth Surface Dynamics at
3 the University of Minnesota.

4 Gerald Frankel is a Professor of Material Science
5 and Engineering and the Director of the Fontana Corrosion
6 Center at Ohio State University.

7 Linda Nozick is a Professor in the School of Civil
8 and Environmental Engineering and Director of the College
9 Program in Systems Engineering at Cornell University.

10 Lee Peddicord is the Director of the Nuclear Power
11 Institute and Professor of Nuclear Engineering at Texas A&M
12 University.

13 Paul Turinsky is a Professor of Nuclear Engineering
14 at North Carolina State University.

15 And Mary Lou Zoback is a Consulting Professor in
16 the Geophysics Department at Stanford University. I should
17 also say that Mary Lou is the Board lead for this workshop
18 and has played a very important role in assembling the panels
19 and expert speakers.

20 I also want to recognize the staff, who are seated
21 at the back against the wall, and simply say that the staff
22 have worked incredibly hard to pull all of this together to
23 get you here and handle the logistics, as well as assemble
24 for the Board a tremendous amount of information, literature,
25 and reports on deep borehole disposal.

1 Related to the introductions, at the back of the
2 room there is a one-page handout, which describes the mission
3 of the Board and also again lists all of the Board members.
4 I think our pictures are there as well. So please take
5 advantage of us during the next two days and to engage us in
6 discussion and to give us your opinions as the workshop
7 proceeds. Also at the back of the room there will be a
8 sign-up sheet if you want to receive Board notifications and
9 information on our meetings.

10 Now, just to comment on the logistics, if you look
11 at the program, you will see we are shifting back and forth
12 between a lecture, our normal presentation format, and a
13 panel format. This will mean that we'll be moving around so
14 that some Board members and moderators will be sitting on one
15 leg of the "V"; panels will be on another leg of the "V".
16 I'll spare you the details, but just be aware we'll be moving
17 around quite a lot. As an example, the Board members will
18 displace the staff members, who will displace some of those
19 of you in the audience. So we'll try to do that as
20 efficiently as possible.

21 I want to note we'll be having a noontime speaker,
22 Professor Fergus Gibb from the University of Sheffield.
23 We'll provide box lunches; so as soon as we break for lunch,
24 please go out the back door, collect your lunches--we know
25 who you are in terms of those who have indicated they want a

1 lunch--then come back in immediately and have a seat so we
2 can get started. And if you didn't express an interest in a
3 lunch, I think there may be a few extras, so you're welcome
4 to those.

5 You should be aware that this workshop is being
6 webcast live. You'll see there are two cameras; and
7 depending on where you're sitting, you may be part of the
8 video. The webcasts are archived and available at our
9 website for about a year after each meeting. And in order to
10 assist those who are watching the webcast, we've posted the
11 workshop presentations on the Board's website, which is
12 www.nwtrb.gov.

13 Over the next two days there will be four
14 opportunities for public comment. We'll provide an
15 opportunity at the end of each morning session before lunch
16 and then at the end of the day. If you would like to make a
17 public comment, then please sign up on the appropriate list
18 at the table so we'll be sure to get to you. If you don't
19 want to make a public comment but want to submit written
20 questions or comments, that's fine. The meeting is being
21 transcribed. All of the public comments and materials that
22 you submit as part of your comment will be part of that
23 public record, which is posted on the Board's website.

24 When you want to speak, please get very close to
25 the microphone, and please identify yourself and your

1 affiliation so that that becomes part of the record.

2 Finally, I want to remind everyone that the Board
3 members will ask a number of questions that you may take to
4 reflect their personal views or impressions of what we're
5 discussing, but these do not represent the Board's position.
6 The Board's position is to be found in our letters and
7 reports.

8 So that's the introduction. Please mute your cell
9 phones, and I'll turn the meeting over to Mary Lou to guide
10 us through the workshop.

11 Mary Lou.

12 ZOBACK: Thank you, Rod.

13 I want to add my welcome to Rod's, particularly to
14 those of you that have traveled quite some distance to get to
15 this workshop. It's really gratifying to see so many people
16 here, and I hope we keep pulling in chairs as needed, which
17 is a nice situation to be in.

18 I especially want to thank those of you that are
19 joining us via live webcast. This is the first time for us,
20 so stick with us.

21 As you've already heard from Rod, the Board's
22 responsibility is evaluating the technical and scientific
23 validity of DOE's work related to the disposition of high-
24 level waste. And as he has also indicated, the subject of
25 this workshop is deep borehole disposal, which means that, in

1 fact, we will be reviewing DOE's current plans for a deep
2 borehole field test. But we are also going to be evaluating
3 this concept more generally.

4 When we comment on DOE activities, the Board often
5 recommends the DOE--and they already are in most cases--take
6 advantage of the research and investigations that are being
7 carried out around the world on any given topic and take
8 advantage of the lessons learned by these various
9 investigators.

10 To that end, in this meeting we have engaged a lot
11 of these international experts; and I am pleased to say that
12 here today we have representatives from Canada, the Czech
13 Republic, Germany, Korea, Sweden, Switzerland, and the U.K.,
14 many of the countries that are exploring this option for some
15 of their waste. On the panel we have experts from academia,
16 from industry, consulting fields, and also government and
17 NGOs; so a wide range of experts that will be weighing in.

18 I want to give you a very brief review of the
19 agenda, which we will be covering over the next two days. To
20 begin with, I am very pleased that this morning we have Dr.
21 Lynn Orr, who is the Under Secretary at DOE for Science and
22 Energy. And he is the principal advisor to Secretary Moniz
23 and the Deputy Secretary on clean energy technologies as well
24 as science and energy research. He will be talking to us--
25 describing for us--right, Lynn?--Lynn is also a colleague

1 from Stanford--DOE strategy for the management and disposal
2 of spent nuclear fuel and high-level waste in general and how
3 deep borehole disposal will fit into that strategy.

4 Next we're going to hear from Tim Gunter of the
5 DOE's Office of Nuclear Energy, and he is going to lay out
6 for us DOE's deep borehole research program. And we have
7 also asked him to explain DOE's rationale for considering the
8 deep borehole disposal option and how such an approach might
9 be implemented.

10 Then following Tim's presentation, Dave Sassani and
11 Ernest Hardin from Sandia Labs are going to provide us with
12 some of the specifics of this deep borehole test program.
13 And we have asked them to tell us how the deep borehole
14 testing that's planned is going to provide DOE with a strong
15 technical basis for judging the feasibility of this concept.

16 After the DOE presentations, which are going to
17 take the entire morning, we're going to hold the first of our
18 four public comment sessions. Those of you that aren't
19 familiar with the Board, our meetings are open to the general
20 public and announced a month ahead of time. And this is a
21 rare chance for the general public to have an opportunity to
22 speak to DOE directly.

23 And I am very pleased to say, as Rod has already
24 mentioned, Professor Fergus Gibbs from the University of
25 Sheffield in the U.K. will be our lunchtime speaker. It's

1 sure to be a good talk; and I think Fergus, more than any
2 other scientist, has been instrumental in the revitalization
3 of interest in this deep borehole concept.

4 You've already heard the lunch logistics, and
5 you'll be reminded of them again when the time comes. But
6 basically Fergus is going to be speaking at lunch, so we need
7 to get back in here quickly so we can give him our full,
8 undivided attention.

9 In the afternoon we'll begin the open part of the
10 workshop, and that is going to be dominated by panel
11 discussions. And as you'll see on the agenda, when we
12 constructed the panels we sought the very best experts from
13 around the world, and we tasked them with some very specific
14 questions to address. The panels will have brief
15 presentations by the panel members, and then there will be a
16 discussion moderated by a Board member of what had just been
17 discussed. Then the topic will be open to discussion and
18 questions, any responses by DOE, questions from the Board
19 members, staff, other panelists. We have a lot of experts
20 whose expertise is overlapping, so we hope to hear questions
21 from the other panelists on any given panel and also the
22 audience as time permits.

23 So Panel 1 is going to discuss previous experience
24 related to deep drilling in crystalline rocks. I'll be
25 moderating that panel.

1 Panel 2 is going to be moderated by my colleague,
2 Allen Croff, Nuclear Engineer, and this is going to address
3 the challenges related to emplacing waste in a borehole.

4 Board Member Jerry Frankel, a materials scientist,
5 is going to moderate the last panel session of this
6 afternoon; and that's going to be related to the technical
7 issues related to the integrity of borehole seals.

8 And then at the end of the day we are also going to
9 have a chance for public comments again. And if anyone is
10 here that would like to make a comment, please sign up
11 outside. There is a place to do that.

12 At the end of the day we are going to adjourn the
13 meeting and move to a poster session just across the lobby
14 area. There will be a variety of posters. This has turned
15 out to be a very popular part of our Board meetings. It's a
16 chance for Board members, the staff, and the audience to
17 interact directly; and DOE will have a number of
18 presentations covering aspects that weren't able to be
19 covered in the morning. So we invite you all to join us for
20 that. It's going to be in what's called the Embassy Room,
21 which is, unbelievably, about a quarter of the size of this
22 room. So it'll be a very cozy gathering.

23 Tomorrow morning we are going to hear from EPA.
24 Dan Schultheisz of EPA is going to talk about their
25 perspectives on the disposal of radioactive waste in

1 boreholes.

2 Following that presentation, we're going to start
3 again with panel discussions. Panel 4 is going to be
4 examining hydrogeologic conditions at depth, chaired by Board
5 hydrogeologist Jean Bahr. Panel 5 is going to be examining
6 geochemical conditions at depth, chaired by Board member and
7 geochemist Susan Brantley. And then Rod Ewing, our Chair, is
8 going to be moderating Panel 6, which is on waste forms and
9 canister materials. And after those panel discussions we'll
10 have another period for public comment.

11 Then after lunch tomorrow Panel 7 will also be
12 moderated by Rod. It is going to be discussing the efficacy
13 of deep borehole disposal and risk analysis.

14 And then following all the panel discussions we are
15 going to have a chance to reflect on what we've heard, what's
16 been heard, and we are going to ask one panelist from each
17 panel to report back on what they feel the key issues are
18 related to their particular area of expertise.

19 And, finally, we are going to end up hearing from
20 Andrew Griffith, the Associate Deputy Assistant Secretary--
21 there are a lot of adjectives there--for Fuel Cycle
22 Technologies. And he is going to be here to wrap things up
23 for us. And we have asked Andy to reflect back on what he's
24 heard and tell us how this potentially could impact the DOE
25 program.

1 We're really looking forward to these next few
2 days. I am just delighted to see such a growing audience.
3 This is just great.

4 And we want to--I have one small request. I hate
5 acronyms; I really do. So whenever possible, I hope that
6 we've cleared the acronyms off the slides. If not, I
7 apologize. And whenever possible, try to use the words
8 you're saying. We've got a lot of non-U.S. people. I am an
9 American citizen. I don't know many acronyms. So, anyway,
10 let's try to do that.

11 I hope the workshop is going to be--you're going to
12 find it useful. I hope you find it informative, and I hope
13 you find it enjoyable, in fact.

14 So, with that, let's get started. And I want to
15 say, I've got my iPhone timer set up, so we're going to try
16 to stick strictly to schedule. Thanks a lot. So let's get
17 started. I see we have Lynn's talk right here.

18 Again, I'd like to introduce Under Secretary Lynn
19 Orr. Lynn has just recently been confirmed the last six
20 months or so, a very drawn-out process. You know the U.S.
21 Congress. Lynn is a petroleum engineer by training, but I
22 would say he has dabbled in an awful lot of things, been
23 involved in providing expert opinion through National Academy
24 studies on all manners of issues related to energy and energy
25 technology. He was the founding director of the center at

1 Stanford on climate and energy, an industrial affiliation
2 program; former Dean of the School of Earth Sciences at
3 Stanford, now the School of Earth, Energy, and Environmental
4 Sciences. And I am very pleased to welcome Dr. Lynn Orr.

5 ORR: All right, well, good morning, everyone. It's
6 actually great to be here. There are some friends in the
7 audience, so it's nice to see them. And I have to say that,
8 you know, my job has lots of speaking assignments, but every
9 once in a while there is one where I actually know what we're
10 talking about. And so there's enough earth science involved
11 in what you'll be discussing to make me wish I could spend a
12 day here today and tomorrow with you. Alas, that's not going
13 to happen. But I am going to look forward to hearing from
14 all of you.

15 I do want to thank the Board and Chairman Rod Ewing
16 for sponsoring this workshop. It's an important opportunity
17 to delve deeply into questions that we really need to
18 understand better as we go forward. And it has an important
19 bearing on the Administration's strategy for management and
20 disposal of used nuclear fuel and high-level radioactive
21 waste. So it really is a very important topic.

22 So my assignment this morning is to talk about the
23 back end of the fuel cycle and what the Administration is
24 doing to meet the challenge of managing and disposing of our
25 country's nuclear waste. And in particular, of course, this

1 workshop is looking at the questions that will have to be
2 understood for deep borehole disposal of some waste forms.

3 Now, I know you all know that nuclear power
4 provides almost 20 percent of the electricity generated in
5 the United States, and it's about 60 percent of the
6 electricity that doesn't emit greenhouse gases, except for
7 the concrete and steel that went into the power plants. So
8 it's the largest single contributor to carbon-free electric
9 power generation.

10 And as we think about the climate challenges that
11 are ahead, that's an important component of the energy mix
12 for the nation, so it will continue to play a very important
13 role going forward as part of the President's Clean Power
14 Plan. And it's hard to see how we would get to the
15 President's goal of reducing carbon dioxide emissions by 32
16 percent below 2005 levels by 2030 if we don't have nuclear
17 power available as a component of the energy mix.

18 So if we are going to make that happen, to continue
19 to be able to use nuclear power in the way that we have in
20 the past, we have to take a set of actions to ensure the
21 continued availability of the nuclear-generated electricity
22 in the United States, as well as the continued viability of
23 the industry that supports all this. And then we obviously
24 have, I think, an ethical obligation to future generations to
25 develop a workable long-term solution for storage and

1 disposal of spent nuclear fuel and the high-level radioactive
2 waste. We've benefited from nuclear power as a reliable
3 carbon-free source of electricity, and future generations
4 deserve the same option as they make choices about their
5 energy portfolio and management of the nuclear fuel cycle.

6 So the Administration's approach, as I'm guessing
7 everybody in this room knows, aligns with the key principles
8 and the core recommendations of the Blue Ribbon Commission on
9 America's Nuclear Future. It's not totally surprising since
10 our Secretary of Energy played an important role in that Blue
11 Ribbon panel and had some idea of what they recommended and
12 why, and so the Administration is moving forward on many of
13 the recommendations there. The Secretary, Secretary Moniz,
14 in his remarks before the Bipartisan Policy Center in March
15 of this year, talked about the path forward for defense waste
16 and our parallel efforts for storage and disposal of
17 commercial spent nuclear fuel.

18 So, beginning in this fiscal year, the Department
19 of Energy will proceed with planning for two types of
20 facilities. One is interim storage for commercial spent
21 nuclear fuel and a separate repository for defense high-level
22 radioactive waste, as authorized by President Obama.

23 Now, developing a separate repository for defense
24 high-level radioactive waste represents what we think is our
25 best opportunity to move forward with disposal of defense

1 waste, some of which is already packaged and in a form that
2 is ready for disposal.

3 In 1985 a decision was made to commingle high-level
4 radioactive waste from defense activities and commercial
5 spent nuclear fuel and high-level radioactive waste. Now, at
6 the time it was assumed that production of new nuclear
7 weapons would continue indefinitely. The 1985 decision also
8 assumed more than one repository would be available for the
9 combined inventory of defense and commercial wastes. The
10 first was to be ready in 1998 and a second soon thereafter.
11 I probably don't have to say to this group that the path to a
12 common repository has been somewhat more controversial,
13 costly, and delayed than was anticipated in 1985.

14 So the circumstances since 1985, of course, have
15 changed quite significantly. Among other important features,
16 the Cold War is over, and the United States is no longer
17 generating defense high-level radioactive waste associated
18 with weapons production. That's a good thing. As a result,
19 a known quantity of defense high-level radioactive waste now
20 exists in different forms that are largely defined; and that
21 opens up possibilities to look at separate disposal pathways
22 for these waste forms.

23 Some of this waste is less radioactive, thermally
24 cooler, and easier to handle than commercial spent nuclear
25 fuel, which, of course, spends a much longer being

1 irradiated. So this can translate into simpler designs,
2 greater flexibility in site selection, and possibly fewer
3 licensing and transportation challenges for a separate
4 defense repository. As a result, a separate defense
5 repository could be made available earlier than a repository
6 including commercial spent nuclear fuel.

7 Now, earlier availability of a defense repository
8 could reduce the substantial costs to the Department of
9 Energy of ongoing storage, treatment, and management of waste
10 that's currently stored at our facilities. It could also
11 help us meet the regulatory obligations, which would
12 presumably help us avoid other costs triggered by missed
13 milestones prescribed in various legal agreements with the
14 states. It's a complex process, and we do have obligations
15 there as well. Establishing a repository for defense high-
16 level radioactive waste would represent significant progress
17 toward completing the Department's clean-up mission and
18 addressing the federal government's Cold War legacy, as well
19 as meeting our obligation to manage the nation's nuclear
20 waste.

21 So there are plenty of challenges there. But with
22 the Administration's decision to move forward with planning
23 for a separate defense repository, we have a significant
24 change in our nuclear waste management policy; and we believe
25 it's well justified in light of the changed circumstances,

1 experience gained, and lessons learned over the last 30
2 years.

3 So our initiation of activities to do this, to
4 develop a separate repository for defense high-level
5 radioactive waste, does not mean that the Administration will
6 put on hold our efforts to find a solution for commercial
7 spent nuclear fuel. Indeed, we believe that pursuing a
8 separate repository for defense high-level radioactive waste
9 will facilitate parallel efforts to permanently dispose of
10 commercial spent nuclear fuel.

11 The Administration remains committed to the
12 framework laid out in the 2013 Strategy for Management and
13 Disposal of Used Nuclear Fuel and High-Level Radioactive
14 Waste for moving toward a sustainable program for integrated
15 waste management systems that will be supported by a consent-
16 based approach to siting that will ensure public trust and
17 confidence in decision-making throughout the process.

18 So the strategy for developing a comprehensive
19 integrated waste management system reflects the judgment that
20 a one-size-fits-all approach to managing the nuclear waste is
21 not feasible and not likely to be successful. Our goal is to
22 provide current and future decision makers with a range of
23 options by restoring the multiple-path-multiple-facility
24 approach that was embodied in the Nuclear Waste Policy Act
25 before the 1987 amendments.

1 Now, we are envisioning a waste management system
2 that may contain a pilot interim storage facility, a
3 full-scale interim storage facility, and a geologic
4 repository for commercial spent nuclear fuel, in addition to
5 a separate defense repository and potentially deep borehole
6 disposal of some smaller waste forms, assuming all the
7 questions that you're considering here are answered
8 satisfactorily.

9 Going forward, our approach to siting these waste
10 management facilities will be adaptable and flexible. Final
11 configuration of the integrated system will be defined
12 through a consent-based siting process that reflects input
13 from potential host communities, federal, state, and local
14 governments, and other affected stakeholders, as well as the
15 interests of the American citizens, of course. We believe
16 that this approach will put the U.S. government firmly on a
17 path toward a successful process.

18 So what's actually taking place? Full
19 implementation of an integrated waste management system will
20 require thoughtful legislation and consensus on several
21 contentious issues and interests. So I don't mean to
22 minimize the difficulty of that. In the meantime, as all of
23 that goes on, the Administration, through the Department of
24 Energy's Office of Nuclear Energy, is undertaking activities
25 that are consistent with existing statutory authority, as

1 well as congressional appropriations guidance to plan for the
2 eventual transportation, storage, and disposal of spent
3 nuclear fuel and high-level radioactive waste.

4 So our current activities are aligned with the
5 Administration's strategy and have focused on several items.
6 One is planning for a separate repository for the defense
7 high-level radioactive waste; planning for an interim storage
8 facility as an integrated component of a waste management
9 system; preparing for large-scale transportation of spent
10 nuclear fuel and high-level radioactive waste with an initial
11 focus on removing spent nuclear fuel from shutdown reactor
12 sites; research and development to further understand the
13 long-term performance of disposal systems in three main
14 geologic rock types--clay or shale, salt, and crystalline
15 rock--as well as R&D in planning for a field test related to
16 deep borehole disposal, the subject of this workshop; and,
17 finally, stakeholder engagement in keeping with our focus on
18 a consent-based approach to siting.

19 So in all of these activities we are committed to
20 providing analysis and information to inform future decisions
21 on an integrated waste management system.

22 So let me say a few words about this separate
23 repository idea. Soon after the President's authorization in
24 March 2015 to develop a separate repository for defense
25 waste, the Department initiated technical activities related

1 to the disposal of some Department of Energy-managed
2 high-level radioactive waste. We are currently focused on
3 activities related to characterization and inventory of
4 defense high-level radioactive waste, preliminary design
5 concepts for the inventory in various media, safety analyses,
6 development of a phased approach to technical site
7 evaluation, and planning for the processes related to
8 eventual NRC licensing.

9 On the interim storage side, we are also engaged in
10 planning activities for siting and development of one or more
11 interim storage facilities. We are initially focused on
12 developing a pilot interim storage facility that could accept
13 spent nuclear fuel from shutdown reactors. Our activities
14 include developing generic design alternatives that could be
15 associated either with a pilot or larger interim storage
16 facility.

17 We are currently investigating alternatives for a
18 capability to inspect and remediate canisters, an R&D
19 laboratory facility, a repackaging facility, and facilities
20 for the maintenance of the transportation fleet and casks.
21 We are also exploring the costs and potential benefits of
22 implementing a standardized transportation, aging, and
23 disposal approach that would streamline the process of
24 accepting spent nuclear fuel from diverse sites.

25 And interim storage facility is an integral part of

1 a flexible and resilient waste system, and the Department's
2 goal is to plan for an interim storage facility that is fully
3 complementary to but not a substitute for a geologic
4 repository. Establishing an interim storage facility as part
5 of a comprehensive system will allow the federal government
6 to begin meeting its obligation to accept spent nuclear fuel
7 earlier, provide flexibility, and improve overall system
8 reliability once a storage repository is in operation.

9 So what about transportation? No matter how we
10 approach integrated waste management, a carefully planned and
11 developed transportation capability will have to be created
12 to support all components of that system. So in support of
13 this capability, we are continuing to conduct planning
14 activities for transportation of commercial spent nuclear
15 fuel and defense high-level radioactive waste.

16 As part of this effort, we are initiating work to
17 design and analyze and fabricate railcar equipment;
18 developing a standardized methodology for determining
19 possible transportation routes and the emergency response
20 infrastructure related to those routes; working with
21 interested tribes and states to create policies and
22 procedures that would pertain to the routing of nuclear
23 waste; and studying the unique requirements that apply to
24 accepting and transporting spent nuclear fuel from shutdown
25 reactor sites. No small task those.

1 Our efforts on transportation of spent nuclear fuel
2 and high-level radioactive waste will support the interim
3 storage idea as well as ultimate disposal of both defense
4 high-level radioactive waste and commercial spent nuclear
5 fuel.

6 On the R&D side, including, of course, deep
7 borehole disposal, the Department is also performing research
8 and development activities to further our understanding of
9 long-term performance of disposal systems. This includes
10 subsurface research related to generic repository designs and
11 modeling that's being led by our Office of Used Nuclear Fuel
12 Disposition in the three rock types I mentioned: salt,
13 granite, and clay or shale. As part of this research, we are
14 initiating a field test to evaluate the deep borehole
15 concept, which, of course, as you know, is the primary focus
16 of this workshop.

17 So there's multiple potential indications that the
18 deep borehole disposal concept may provide a technically
19 feasible and cost-effective alternative for safe disposal of
20 some smaller Department of Energy-managed radioactive waste
21 forms. To be clear, this option could only be feasible for a
22 part of the waste inventory, and the mined geologic
23 repository would still be required.

24 So within the FY16 funding request--which I note
25 that the budget has not yet passed even though we have

1 embarked on FY16, so this is in the request--for used nuclear
2 fuel disposition R&D activities, we've asked for 26 million
3 to continue to move forward with plans for a field test on
4 deep borehole disposal. The currently planned test will look
5 at the feasibility of the concept without use of any actual
6 radioactive waste. So this is a small characterization
7 borehole and a second larger research borehole, and the
8 estimated project duration is approximately five years.

9 Now, the siting and characterization in drilling of
10 a single borehole for disposal--for actual disposal--would
11 likely take four to five years with an additional six months
12 likely required for each additional disposal hole if it's
13 determined that more than one is needed and the hole approach
14 proceeds.

15 So if the concept proves feasible, further work
16 will be required to estimate the scope and duration of a
17 licensing procedure for a deep borehole disposal site. So
18 the Nuclear Regulatory Commission's licensing process for
19 geologic repositories does not currently explicitly address
20 specific requirements for licensing deep boreholes for
21 permanent disposal of radioactive waste.

22 So we will continue to refine the cost and schedule
23 estimates for the deep borehole disposal as the work goes
24 forward and data and information are obtained from the field
25 test. Secretary Moniz and I both strongly support the idea

1 of this research to evaluate whether the deep borehole
2 concept has merit. The research from this effort will inform
3 future decisions on whether deep borehole disposal is a
4 feasible option. So this is consistent with our goal that I
5 mentioned earlier to provide current and future decision
6 makers with a range of options to manage the nation's nuclear
7 waste.

8 Now, let me say just a word about one other thing
9 that's going on here and into which this fits, and that's the
10 Subsurface Technology and Engineering Crosscut program. One
11 of the things that we've done in the last couple of years at
12 DOE is to assemble teams to look at tough, interesting
13 problems that cut across the expertise of the Agency.

14 And one of them is this so-called SubTER process.
15 This is subsurface research that goes--really, it's done in
16 multiple offices across DOE. And, of course, it applies
17 because something like 80 percent of the current U.S. energy
18 needs involve some sort of use of the subsurface. And it's
19 likely that if we do geologic storage of CO₂, play a role
20 there, there is the geothermal side. There is a huge
21 geothermal resource in the upper part of the earth's crust if
22 we had the ability to make the fluids go where we want them
23 to go. And, believe me, I've spent a career trying to
24 understand how to do that, and I know how hard the problem
25 is.

1 It's also true that carefully selected,
2 characterized, engineered, and operated subsurface sites have
3 the potential to provide storage capacity for large
4 quantities of CO₂ and opportunities for responsible
5 management and disposal of hazardous materials and other
6 waste streams. So that aspect of this needs to be thought
7 about as well. And then, of course, the broad topic of
8 discovering and effectively harnessing subsurface resources,
9 while mitigating the impacts of their development, those are
10 essential components of the nation's energy strategy going
11 forward.

12 So let me conclude by talking a little bit about
13 stakeholder engagement. As we continue with each of these
14 activities, the Department is committed to pursuing a
15 consent-based siting process for both storage and disposal
16 facilities that will ensure public trust and confidence in
17 the decision-making throughout the process.

18 The Administration's strategy endorses the
19 principle that prospective host jurisdictions must be
20 recognized as partners; that overall public trust and
21 confidence is a prerequisite to success; and, accordingly,
22 our efforts to achieve stakeholder engagement will continue
23 to inform the Department's activities as we move forward in
24 developing an effective waste management system.

25 So I'll stop. As you all know the risk when you

1 have a recovering academic standing up here, I mean, you wind
2 them up, you get the 50 minutes; right? But I'm trying to
3 restrain that, so I'll stop and say thank you all very much
4 for participating. The expertise that's gathered in this
5 room and that will be shared over the next two days is an
6 absolutely essential component of thinking hard about the
7 questions that we have to answer going forward if deep
8 borehole storage is to play a role in what we do.

9 So thank you for participating here, and I'll be
10 happy to try to answer a question or two provided they're not
11 too hard. Thanks.

12 ZOBACK: Thank you very much, Lynn. And you may realize
13 it's also risky when you finish about 15 minutes early.

14 We have plenty of time for questions, so I want to
15 first open the questions to the Board members. Do you have--
16 anyone on the Board have questions? Rod. And please
17 identify yourself.

18 EWING: Rod Ewing, Board. So, Lynn, thank you very
19 much. That was a wonderful summary of the Administration's
20 plans.

21 The separation of defense from commercial waste
22 into two separate repositories in a certain sense is
23 consistent with the Nuclear Waste Policy Act of 1982 where we
24 were to have two repositories, one following the other.
25 Thinking about the Waste Policy Act, has there been any

1 thought given to geographic equity? I mean, once you have
2 two repositories, one could imagine that one would be in the
3 West and one in the East, maybe located close to the center
4 of gravity for the different types of waste.

5 ORR: So that could be one of the things that you would
6 think about in that siting. No sort of pre-decision attempt
7 at that balancing has taken place that I know of. I mean,
8 you can imagine--I know you could write down the list of
9 things that you would want to think about for a particular
10 siting location. And, you know, you could imagine that
11 minimizing transportation distances would be one element of
12 that. But as far as I know, there is no attempt ahead of
13 time to say we should presuppose the answer to that question.

14 ZOBACK: Paul.

15 TURINSKY: Paul Turinsky. Two questions, both fairly
16 short answers. For the interim storage are you considering
17 both commercial and DOE-owned spent nuclear fuel?

18 ORR: As I understand it, yeah, those are both
19 possibilities. What's being considered for the borehole
20 stuff is really, you know, the small waste form kinds of
21 things. So that leaves kind of everything else to be
22 considered. My guess is that there would be presumably
23 separate interim storage for the defense waste and the
24 civilian spent nuclear fuel, but I'm not absolutely sure
25 that's been firmly decided yet. But we're really not

1 thinking at this point about spent nuclear fuel going in the
2 deep borehole kind of setting.

3 TURINSKY: Yeah, yeah, it was more the interim storage,
4 whether that would be commingled still.

5 ORR: Well, I think that remains to be seen, but the
6 uncommingling, if that's a word--I'm from Texas, so we, of
7 course, don't bother with the actual English construction.
8 So I think if the idea is to be able to use the perhaps
9 simpler process for the defense waste and there is the Naval
10 reactor fuel and--we'll have to see how that plays out. I
11 don't think it's decided.

12 TURINSKY: And my second question is--and I know this is
13 way out--you must have some idea of a schedule of when a deep
14 borehole would become available for disposition versus a
15 defense-only repository. What is that schedule?

16 ORR: You know, I'd like to ask you to defer that
17 question to the folks from the program who really are looking
18 at the details. I think both of them are quite a ways out.

19 ZOBACK: Jerry.

20 FRANKEL: Jerry Frankel, Board. So it's particularly
21 heartening to hear the Department of Energy embrace the Blue
22 Ribbon Commission recommendations on consent-based siting.
23 Can you elaborate a little bit on what the plans are for the
24 Department in terms of actually what it means? What does
25 consent-based siting mean to the Department at this point?

1 ORR: So it's a good question. It's actually the kind
2 of thing that we would try to lay out in something about what
3 we would expect from that process this fiscal year. We can
4 do sort of preliminary planning with our existing authority;
5 but for budget to actually do this and staff it in the way
6 that it would need to be done, we need congressional action
7 for that.

8 But our intent would be to propose a process,
9 invite lots of public comment, and really engage in a
10 stakeholder process that would actually define what would we
11 mean by a consent-based siting and how would that have to go
12 forward. So I don't want to try to constrain that any more
13 than that at this stage of the game. But it's an essential
14 first step going forward.

15 ZOBACK: Sue.

16 BRANTLEY: Sue Brantley, Board. I just wanted to ask a
17 question. It's really a clarification. I think you said
18 that the Deep Borehole Field Test project would be a five-
19 year project, but then I think you next said that in the
20 future it would take four to five years for actual disposal.

21 ORR: Yeah.

22 BRANTLEY: Can you just clarify that? That seems very
23 rosy if I got it correct--

24 ORR: That's--yeah. But, you know, that kind of assumes
25 that everything goes forward as we anticipate at that stage,

1 so obviously you have to refine that as you go forward. But
2 that's kind of overall. If you're looking at the overall
3 time scale, that's a decade right there, assuming that there
4 is no toing and froing on that. So it's a long process.

5 ZOBACK: Any other questions from the Board?

6 I'm going to ask one, and I want to follow--this is
7 Mary Lou Zoback, Board--follow up on Jerry's question about
8 the consent-based siting. One of the things the Board's had
9 the privilege of doing the past few years is visiting other
10 countries where they are moving forward with geologic
11 repositories and specifically examining the consent-based
12 aspect of that. And I certainly hope that DOE will consider
13 actively engaging, maybe on an advisory panel, members from
14 these other--engage individuals from these other countries,
15 because there's an awful lot to learn, I think most
16 importantly, from their mistakes.

17 And I will point out that the Board is releasing a
18 report now shortly that one of our staff members, Dan Metlay,
19 has done, a monumental report that really summarizes the
20 experience and the misadventures country by country in this
21 process. But there is a wealth of mistakes to be made, and
22 many of them have been made already, and it would be really
23 good to try to avoid them.

24 ORR: Well, that's a good idea. We should try to not be
25 overly inventive in new mistakes, even as well--yeah, of

1 course it makes sense to take advantage of the experience of
2 other places. I think there's absolutely no question of
3 that. And we appreciate the effort that goes into collecting
4 as much of that information as possible.

5 ZOBACK: Great. Thanks.

6 Staff, questions. Seeing none, any of our
7 panelists, any questions for Lynn? We have five more
8 minutes.

9 Yes. Can you please come to the mic and identify
10 yourself?

11 ION: Hi, good morning. My name is Cristian Ion, and I
12 work for the Government Accountability Office. So I have two
13 questions for you. One of them--

14 ZOBACK: Excuse me, I didn't hear which--

15 ION: Government Accountability Office.

16 ZOBACK: Oh, GAO. Okay.

17 ION: Yes, GAO.

18 ZOBACK: U.S. government.

19 ION: U.S. government. So now that you have this two-
20 repository approach, does that mean that the commingled one-
21 repository option is off the table?

22 ORR: Well, I don't know that it necessarily precludes
23 some commingling going forward, but we think it makes sense
24 to separate those streams, largely because we have better
25 definition of the defense waste now that we're not producing

1 any more. And it's a smaller quantity, so it gives us an
2 opportunity to test ideas, test the consent-based siting
3 process, and work our way through to provide some experience
4 that would then be useful in the broader siting questions
5 with regard to both an interim storage facility and a mined
6 repository for the commercial spent nuclear fuel.

7 So the intent for now, I think, is to keep those
8 separate. But we've already seen the things evolve with
9 time, so I wouldn't absolutely guarantee that there couldn't
10 be some version of that.

11 ION: Right. So the other question is, with the staff
12 levels at DOE being somewhat low, I mean, they were kind of
13 low working on one repository. How is it possible to work on
14 two repositories with lower staff at the same time?

15 ORR: Well, we would need some congressional budget
16 support to be able to do this in the way that it needs to be
17 done. So--

18 ION: Okay, thank you.

19 ORR: --we have proposed that for FY16 for a start, and
20 we have more in the FY17 budget that's wending its way
21 through the system.

22 ZOBACK: Great. Thank you.

23 Any other questions? Okay. Well, again, let's
24 give Lynn a big round of applause to thank him.

25 You've developed Washington-speak very quickly.

1 I'm impressed.

2 ORR: --productive.

3 ZOBACK: Good training; right?

4 Okay. Now we're going to begin to hear this--now
5 begin our presentations from DOE specifically on their plans.
6 And to start that, we're going to hear from Tim Gunter from
7 the DOE's Office of Nuclear Energy, where he's the Program
8 Manager for Used Nuclear Fuel Disposition Research and
9 Development. And so he will speak directly to the planned
10 research program.

11 And I just want to point out, any of you that might
12 have come in late, I believe there are copies of all the
13 PowerPoint presentations outside on the table; so please
14 avail yourself of those.

15 GUNTER: Good morning. I'm Tim Gunter. I'm the Program
16 Manager for Disposal R&D in the Office of Used Fuel
17 Disposition, and it's my pleasure to be here with you today
18 and speak to you on the deep borehole disposal R&D program,
19 including our fuel tests that we have planned coming up.

20 A bit of an outline of what I'm going to cover; a
21 little bit about the deep borehole disposal concept. I know
22 that most of you in this room are very familiar with the
23 concept; but for the sake of those that may not be, I'm going
24 to just do a little quick high-level summary of the concept,
25 talk about our reference design that we started that we put

1 together to do a lot of our cost estimates and initial
2 planning, and then some details on the field test itself that
3 we kicked off this year.

4 So in used fuel and high-level waste disposal, our
5 office is focused on really just a number of key issues. We
6 want to provide a sound technical basis for multiple viable
7 disposal options in the U.S. So the multiple viable disposal
8 options is kind of where deep borehole comes in. I have some
9 representations here, figures on the screen of different
10 geologic media, the salt and clay and granite, and then also
11 the deep borehole disposal concept.

12 Some of the other areas we want to do is increase
13 confidence in the robustness of the generic disposal
14 concepts. So a lot of this work we're doing is on the
15 modeling, performance assessment, how the radionuclides would
16 behave down deep in the earth, how they move through the
17 media.

18 And then, finally, develop the science and
19 engineering tools needed to support the concept
20 implementation. That would be the science, basically what I
21 just said, how things behave; but also that feeds into your
22 performance assessment. And also the engineering tools would
23 lead you into the hazards analysis and the safety
24 assessments.

25 So, as most of you know, deep borehole disposal has

1 been a topic that's been around for a long time. It's
2 certainly not anything new. It goes back even to the 1950s,
3 and it's been looked at periodically over the past years on
4 and off. Recently Sandia began looking at it in more detail,
5 because, as time has gone by, the drilling technology has
6 improved. Some of the challenges, particularly in the early
7 days, was the drilling technology may not have been quite
8 there to do what we wanted to do. Also, the cost of the
9 drilling technology was quite high to drill that deep and
10 that large a hole down in the crystalline basement.

11 But, in general, the concept consists of drilling a
12 borehole--or it could be an array of boreholes, depending on
13 how much waste you want to dispose of--down into the
14 crystalline basement rock to about 5,000 meters. And then
15 you could place your waste packages in the lower 2,000 meters
16 of the borehole. And then the upper borehole would be sealed
17 with compacted bentonite clay, cement plugs or cemented
18 backfill, or a combination of those or other seals.

19 This is just a representation of kind of a
20 schematic to put things in perspective. You can see the
21 borehole down the 5,000 meters, the lower 2,000-meter
22 disposal zone, and then the upper 3,000 meters would be the
23 seal zone and how that compares with mined geologic
24 repositories as Onkalo and WIPP at 500 meters and 650 meters
25 in depth. And also we just threw in the Burj Khalifa Tower

1 in Dubai at 830 meters.

2 But one of the keys is that at that depth you're
3 well below any fresh groundwater resources. The
4 communication between that depth and surface, we think, is
5 very low; and that's one of the reasons why we want to set
6 out to do the field test is to show that.

7 And this is just an example of the sealing system.
8 Currently our sealing system is not yet completely designed,
9 but it shows kind of a concept of the different types of
10 plugs and materials, the cement and the bentonite. And we're
11 going to talk about a lot of the details in the following
12 presentations, so I'm going to focus more on the programmatic
13 issues and not a lot of--not go into a lot of details on the
14 technical issues.

15 So why did we start thinking about borehole
16 disposal again? Well, there were several factors that
17 entered into this. One is, it could provide a cost-effective
18 alternative for disposal of some smaller DOE-managed waste
19 forms. As was mentioned earlier, this is only a small subset
20 of our total waste inventory. It would be specifically
21 targeted towards those things that would have the right
22 dimensions to fit into the borehole.

23 But some other things that led us to consider this
24 is, crystalline basement rocks are common throughout the
25 United States in many areas. So there's a lot of areas that

1 could potentially host a deep borehole disposal site. As I
2 mentioned, the existing drilling technology has improved
3 greatly over the last few years. It's gotten more
4 economical. So we think that it should permit dependable
5 construction at an acceptable cost.

6 And then a couple of other items. Low permeability
7 down at those depths and long residence time of high-salinity
8 groundwater in the deep crystalline basement suggests very
9 limited interaction with the shallow fresh groundwater.
10 You've got reducing conditions at depth that would limit the
11 solubility, also enhance the sorption of many of the
12 radionuclides and slow down your transport times; and then,
13 finally density stratification of saline groundwater, which
14 underlies the fresh groundwater, and that would oppose any
15 induced groundwater convection.

16 So all those would really lead to reducing travel
17 time and isolating the waste from the biosphere, which is
18 kind of summed up in the first bullet there: Why deep
19 borehole disposal? Well, you have the potential for robust
20 isolation. It gives DOE flexibility to consider options for
21 disposal of smaller waste forms. Potentially earlier
22 disposal of some wastes might be possible than in a mined
23 geologic repository. We think that for a variety of reasons
24 we may be able to implement a deep borehole disposal system
25 quicker and then possible reduced costs associated with

1 projected treatment of some wastes. If the isolation is so
2 robust, you may not have to have as high-integrity waste
3 canisters, exotic materials, and that type of thing.

4 So this slide kind of shows some undesirable
5 features and then the depth, the crystalline basement chart
6 that I mentioned. I'll start with this. The tan area is all
7 crystalline rock less than 2,000 meters to the surface. The
8 red is granite outcroppings. And then there are some areas
9 that we don't have enough data for. Either it's very complex
10 data--so this is not really showing the depth--but like in
11 the mountainous West, Appalachian Mountains, you have the
12 granite outcrops but not necessarily a good picture of the
13 depth. But even without that, you've got large areas in the
14 U.S. that could be potentially suitable for borehole
15 disposal.

16 I think I've kind of covered some of these as I
17 went through, but things that we would look to avoid in a
18 disposal site we've also used as siting guidelines for our
19 field test. So we wanted to get something that was
20 representative of what could ultimately be an actual disposal
21 site. So we're trying to avoid things listed here: economic
22 natural resources, upward hydraulic gradients, high pressure/
23 high heat flow, and then hydraulic connections to the
24 subsurface.

25 And these are just a few slides that kind of

1 illustrate some of those that I've mentioned: the heat flow,
2 you can see, kind of obvious in the West, the high heat
3 flows; oil and gas drillings throughout the U.S. Some of
4 those areas we would want to avoid. And then recent
5 volcanoes and faulting. And this is going to be going into
6 more detail also later on.

7 So what kind of waste would we consider to dispose
8 of in a deep borehole? Well, as I mentioned, it's DOE-
9 managed waste. It's going to be smaller waste, which could
10 be spent nuclear fuel or high-level radioactive waste or
11 other specialized waste types.

12 There was a Sandia report in 2014--we kind of refer
13 to it as shorthand--as the Disposal Options Report. But it
14 went through and identified a number of things that could
15 potentially be candidates for deep borehole disposal. I have
16 a few listed here.

17 One of the ones I know you've heard about--it's
18 kind of the one we keep talking about most--is the cesium and
19 strontium capsules at Hanford. There's 1,936 of them stored
20 in wet storage at Hanford. It's approximately one-third of
21 the total radioactive inventory at Hanford contained in those
22 1,936 capsules. They're relatively small, so they would fit
23 easily within a borehole, either singularly on top of each
24 other, or they could be packaged in multiples of three,
25 bundled in three.

1 Some of the other types of waste: untreated
2 calcine high-level waste at Idaho National Lab. It's another
3 potential one. There are some salt wastes from
4 electrometallurgical treatment of sodium-bonded fuels. They
5 could be packaged in small canisters as they're produced.
6 And then finally some DOE-managed spent fuel stored in pools
7 at Idaho and Savannah River site.

8 So our reference design I mentioned is the next
9 section in my talk. This goes back a few years. I'm going
10 to try to set the stage for how we got started on this, and
11 then the following presentations will take you from our
12 reference design to where we are today, because this is
13 something that continues to evolve.

14 When we first started looking at this, we had to
15 have designs in order to do initial cost estimates and
16 planning and some analysis. So Arnold et al. (2011) updated
17 some of the past work. What they were looking for was a
18 simple and achievable, internally consistent system for waste
19 disposal that would meet all the regulatory requirements for
20 operational and public safety.

21 It updated and refined the conceptual design
22 presented in Brady et al. (2009), and it was primarily, like
23 I said, to consider preliminary design alternatives; it
24 provided a reference for performance assessment and risk
25 analysis; also provided a reference design for more accurate

1 cost estimates. So that was one of the things we used to
2 determine whether it was even feasible to move forward with
3 additional work. And I just note that there's numerous
4 viable design alternatives available out there, and many of
5 them could be used as a reference design to do cost analysis
6 and planning, but this is what we chose.

7 This is just a schematic of a typical borehole that
8 could be used that shows the stepdown from starting out at
9 36-inch diameter down to 17-inch diameter at depth. It would
10 be cased or lined to ensure unrestricted emplacement of the
11 waste canisters, and also the casing would facilitate
12 potential removal if you had to pull the canisters out before
13 you set the final seals. And then the perforated liner at
14 the bottom would be left in place in the disposal zone, but
15 it would be removed in the seal zone along with most of the
16 intermediate casing so that you could set a good seal.

17 The reference design for the waste canister is
18 fairly simple. This is just a carbon steel tubing, threaded
19 at each end, and a threaded connection that would be screwed
20 together into strings of the canisters; and they would be
21 designed to withstand the hydrostatic pressure and mechanical
22 load of the overlying canisters, so it would withstand the
23 pressure at depth. And then also you have about a string of
24 40 canisters, so it has to be able to withstand the weight of
25 the canisters on top of it. And the canisters, like I said,

1 this design is carbon steel, but it would retain their
2 integrity until well after the borehole is loaded and sealed.

3 Another thing that was done years ago back in the
4 '80s is, there was another test at the Nevada test site, now
5 referred to as the Nevada Nuclear Security Site. They
6 actually loaded spent fuel assemblies. They transported them
7 to the site, lowered them down a 420-meter borehole, using a
8 surface vehicle that upended the shielded casks. They had
9 shield doors top and bottom. It was lowered into an
10 underground granite test facility and left for three years,
11 and then later on it was removed to the surface.

12 And the key point here, I think, is this is
13 representative of some of the surface handling that would be
14 required. Certainly this would not be necessarily a design
15 we use, but it shows that even as far back as 1986 that they
16 could lower very highly-radioactive spent fuel down a
17 borehole and bring it back out. Granted, this 420 meters is
18 not 5 kilometers, but the surface handling facility could be
19 similar.

20 This is just a schematic of sort of a 1980 design.
21 Again, this is the reference design that we used for our
22 initial studies, the rig that would load the waste canisters,
23 surface handling, rotate the shipping casks. It would move
24 the casks by a short rail system over the borehole, attach
25 the canister to the canister string, and lower the string

1 into the borehole.

2 As I mentioned, the reference design--a string of
3 about 40 canisters. You would then lower those down. There
4 would be a bridge plug set on top of that so that you don't
5 have a complete length of waste in one, and then you would
6 load in another string of 40. And you keep doing that until
7 you fill up the lower 2 kilometers.

8 Moving then into the Deep Borehole Field Test, so
9 why are we doing it is because additional research and
10 development is necessary in several important areas to
11 further consider the deep borehole disposal option. Things
12 we would need to look at is: evaluate the drilling
13 technology and the borehole construction to 5 kilometers to
14 make sure that we can actually drill a hole that size at that
15 depth; maintain the hole open while we lower the canisters
16 in; and also that it's cost effective.

17 We want to verify the deep geological, geochemical,
18 and hydrological conditions at a representative location. So
19 as part of our field test, we would have a series of downhole
20 tests that would be focused on confirming those conditions,
21 that we understand them, and they are what we think they are
22 and that they would meet our expectations in terms of a
23 robust isolation system.

24 The third bullet, we want to evaluate the
25 canisters, the dummy waste package, and the seals material at

1 a representative temperature, at representative pressures and
2 salinity, and under geochemical conditions at depth.

3 And then, finally, we want to develop and test the
4 engineering methods for waste canister loading, all of the
5 surface handling equipment. We would mock up some of the
6 shielding that would be necessary for a real waste disposal
7 operation and then actually demonstrate that we can emplace
8 and remove the canisters from those depths.

9 So we're doing that with our borehole field test.
10 And, as I said, we got started really this year in Fiscal 15.
11 The major steps we want to go through are, we want to obtain
12 a suitable site that's representative of conditions of an
13 actual disposal site that would be desired. We are going to
14 design, drill, and construct the Characterization Borehole.
15 So as we envision this test, there's actually two boreholes.
16 We call the first one the Characterization Borehole. It's an
17 eight-inch-diameter-at-depth borehole, the 5,000 meters. And
18 we're going to do all our scientific tests--or almost all of
19 our scientific tests--in that borehole.

20 When we started out with our plans, we initially
21 had just planned on drilling the large, what we call Field
22 Test Borehole, the 17-inch bottom hole diameter. And as we
23 were looking at it we realized that we could actually drill
24 two boreholes, one small and one large, for not a huge amount
25 of more money, because you don't tie up the very large drill

1 rig that's necessary to drill the large borehole. And then
2 you do a lot of your scientific testing in the small borehole
3 that's a standard size, so you've got a lot of your tools
4 that are available, and you don't have to go out and
5 fabricate specific tooling and instruments.

6 So when we have the Characterization Borehole, we
7 would then collect data and characterize the crystalline
8 basement conditions and confirm the hydrologic conditions at
9 depth. Assuming that goes well, we would then construct a
10 Field Test Borehole, which is, as I mentioned, a 17-inch
11 bottom-hole diameter. We would design and develop the
12 surface handling and emplacement equipment systems and then
13 the operational methods and procedures that would be
14 necessary for the safe waste package handling and then
15 demonstrate--as I mentioned, you could actually lower those
16 dummy waste packages and canisters down 5,000 meters into the
17 borehole, take them back out.

18 So this is, I guess, kind of a summary of why are
19 we doing a deep borehole field test. So it allows further
20 evaluation of the feasibility of the deep borehole disposal
21 concept. And then, in addition, it's consistent with our UFD
22 Mission of providing multiple viable options for the future
23 decision makers.

24 ZOBACK: UFD?

25 GUNTER: UFD, Used Fuel Disposition.

1 ZOBACK: Thank you.

2 GUNTER: So we're in the Office of Used Nuclear Fuel
3 Disposition. We sometimes refer to Used Fuel Disposition
4 Campaign, which includes not only the DOE office, but also
5 all our laboratory support.

6 The reasons we're doing it, it implements a
7 recommended near-term action of the Blue Ribbon Commission on
8 America's Nuclear Future; it is consistent with the
9 Administration's Strategy for the Management and Disposal of
10 Used Nuclear Fuel and High-Level Radioactive Waste that Dr.
11 Orr discussed before me; and then, finally, we think there is
12 economic and scientific benefits that are of interest to
13 local, state, and regional stakeholders. Many have expressed
14 interest in potentially conducting research if they had a
15 borehole at that depth available to them or potentially even
16 taking it over when DOE has completed what we need to do.

17 So, again, for the people that may not be as
18 familiar with DOE as many of you are, I threw in an
19 organizational chart for the Office of Nuclear Energy,
20 starting with the Assistant Secretary of Nuclear Energy. And
21 I wanted to mention that the Office of Nuclear Energy, it
22 covers a broad range of nuclear-related topics, anywhere from
23 new sources of uranium to advanced fuels, new reactor
24 designs, of course the waste management activities, and then
25 even power supplies for space exploration.

1 But our office, the Office of Used Nuclear Fuel
2 Disposition Research and Development, is shown here in
3 yellow. We're under the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Fuel
4 Cycle Technologies.

5 And one more chart, but this is specific to the
6 Deep Borehole Field Test project organization. And it
7 starts--or I started anyway--with our office, the Used
8 Nuclear Fuel Disposition. Bill Boyle is our Office Director,
9 and then there's me, myself. We're both DOE federal
10 employees. Peter Swift, who is here today, he is referred to
11 as the National Technical Director. He's a Sandia employee,
12 but he manages all our laboratory support for the campaign
13 across the board. And then the Field Test Project Lead,
14 we're using Sandia National Lab as kind of our lead lab for
15 this project. Bob McKinnon, he's not listed, but he's the
16 lead at that level.

17 And then we have many supporting national labs and
18 university partners that are involved in working on this.

19 And then I've got kind of the major components of
20 the field test, including DOE-Idaho, which are providing our
21 procurement support for the contracts that we need. So I'll
22 just go down that first.

23 The contract that we are putting in place--and I'll
24 talk a little bit more about them on the next slide--but site
25 management and drilling integration services for the

1 Characterization Borehole, so we're going out with
2 Procurements to get not only a site to locate the borehole
3 work, but also a site management company and drilling
4 services. And we also have a contract for engineering
5 services, which are mostly related to the handling equipment,
6 the radiological aspects of the mockup shielding, and that
7 actually has been put in place. That's AREVA Federal
8 Services. They are supporting us through a task order for a
9 contract we have in place with them. And then the next step
10 would be the drilling integration services for the Field Test
11 Borehole, which would follow.

12 And then under the laboratory support side, some of
13 the key areas we kind of touched on, site evaluation and data
14 integration; so, in other words, what kind of site are you
15 looking for, some of the guidelines I mentioned that would be
16 desirable or not desirable.

17 Characterization Borehole design and testing, so
18 Sandia and the other labs are actually putting together an
19 initial borehole design, and then that would be coordinated
20 with whoever ultimately is our drilling integration services
21 and our drilling contractor. They are providing project
22 management services.

23 And then the bottom two boxes are the test package
24 and emplacement system engineer, so initial designs of the
25 waste packages and emplacement systems, which they're going

1 to go into more detail later on, and then the demonstration.
2 And this is, again, where AREVA comes in. AREVA will be
3 involved in reviewing and finalizing those designs that we
4 come up with.

5 So here's just another view of the participants.
6 As I mentioned, we have six national laboratories involved,
7 Sandia serving as the lead lab, Los Alamos, Pacific
8 Northwest, Berkeley, Idaho, Oak Ridge, and then AREVA Federal
9 Services as our engineering services contractor. And then
10 yet to be determined is our site services and drilling
11 contractor. And then there is also a number of other
12 individual participants, university representatives, or other
13 consultants that are involved.

14 And here are some examples of the others involved.
15 I'm not going to go through every one of them. I think this
16 is also another slide that's going to be discussed later on.
17 But we have international participation one way or the other.
18 KAERI, Korean Atomic Energy Research Institute, they're doing
19 some borehole tracer test in granite. While it's not
20 specific to deep borehole disposal, it's borehole
21 characterization in granite, so it might have some interest
22 to us. University of Sheffield was mentioned. They're
23 providing R&D support, particularly in the seal design and
24 performance criteria.

25 We have what we call the Nuclear Energy University

1 Program where we provide grants to different universities to
2 do research topics, one of which is to Massachusetts
3 Institute of Technology, and they're doing some work on
4 optimization of deep borehole system.

5 Another program we have, Small Business Innovative
6 Research, kind of similar to the University Program, this is
7 money that's provided to small businesses. They propose
8 topics to do research on, and here is a number of them that
9 are related to deep borehole disposal such as--the top two
10 are sealing systems, rock melt borehole sealing, thermally
11 formed plugs for deep borehole waste disposal, a couple of
12 cement technologies. And then, as Dr. Orr mentioned earlier,
13 our subsurface technology and engineering RD&D--SubTER as
14 it's referred to--they're doing a number of things, one of
15 which is also fit-for-purpose cement for rock-cement
16 interfaces.

17 So the major components of the Deep Borehole Field
18 Test, I kind of covered that, because all these are kind of
19 wrapped up into a science thrust and an engineering thrust.
20 And, as I mentioned, these would kind of feed into your
21 safety assessment and your performance assessment. So a lot
22 of the science work would go into your performance
23 assessment; a lot of the engineering work would go into your
24 safety assessment, hazard analysis, that type of thing.

25 This was our original concept of a schedule going

1 out five years, selecting a site, initiating a selection
2 process, procure the engineering and science needs, construct
3 the borehole and do the emplacement, and then finalize a
4 demonstration. I have a more detailed schedule coming up.
5 As I mentioned, this is the projected five years,
6 approximately \$80 million over the five-year lifetime.

7 I think we've covered that.

8 So a little more detail of our schedule. You can
9 see we have started really back in '15, early '15, and it
10 goes out through September of '19.

11 We have issued a draft request for a proposal. We
12 awarded the engineering service task order, which is AREVA,
13 issued a request for a proposal for the Characterization
14 Borehole. And then the proposals were due September 23rd,
15 due and received September 23rd. I can't really talk a lot
16 about them, because it's an active procurement that's
17 ongoing. But it leads us to--our target date on the schedule
18 is February 5th. We're hoping to beat that if the
19 procurement goes well. Always a lot of uncertainties in
20 procurements. And then in red here I have our key target
21 of--we want to start drilling the Characterization Borehole
22 by September 1, 2016.

23 So I'm going to talk just a little bit about how
24 we're working the process for procuring a site. I mentioned
25 that we issued a request for information, so we solicited

1 input from states and local communities, individuals, private
2 groups, academia, pretty much anybody out there that had an
3 interest in either participating in the borehole field test
4 or potentially providing a site that was suitable.

5 So we posted that to the Federal Business
6 Opportunities website, which is the website the U.S.
7 government uses to announce our funding opportunities. And
8 that was posted back in October of 2014. We gave a 45-day
9 response period and received a number of responses on
10 December 8th. And in general what that indicated was, there
11 was significant interest out there for participating and
12 potentially hosting a field site.

13 So we followed that in April of this year with a
14 Sources Sought and a draft Request for Proposal. So the
15 Sources Sought basically went out and said, "Is there anybody
16 out there that can do this type of work?" in other words,
17 drill a 17-inch hole at 5,000 meters in crystalline base.
18 And then at the same time or right after it, we issued the
19 actual draft RFP for comment, so we wanted to get the people
20 that were interested and give them a chance to see the RFP
21 that we were going to ultimately issue and get their feedback
22 on, you know, does this make sense for the things we
23 overlooked? Are we asking for something that is not
24 feasible?

25 So we got a number of responses to that in May of

1 this year. So we took the responses and feedback that we got
2 from the draft RFP. Where appropriate, we rolled those into
3 the final RFP, issued that in July of this year, and, as I
4 said, proposals were due September 23rd and also received.
5 So that procurement process is ongoing right now.

6 So I think this is the last slide. It's kind of a
7 wrap-up conclusions. So there's multiple factors that have
8 indicated that a deep borehole disposal concept could provide
9 an alternative to mined geologic repositories and provide a
10 safe location for disposal of radioactive wastes, and there's
11 a number of widely available locations that could be
12 potentially suitable, based on the favorable geologic and
13 hydrological conditions.

14 Implementing deep borehole disposal with a simple
15 reference design could be feasible, could be cost effective,
16 and it would have sufficient capacity for accommodating
17 smaller DOE waste forms.

18 We think that a deep borehole field test, as I have
19 described and laid out here, is the next logical step in
20 evaluating this waste disposal option and that economic and
21 scientific benefits of this field test could be valuable for
22 local, state, and regional stakeholders.

23 And then, in conclusion, DOE is moving forward with
24 the Deep Borehole Field Test.

25 And that is the end of my presentation. I'd be

1 happy to answer questions.

2 ZOBACK: Thank you, Tim. That was a very nice summary.

3 We have lots of time for questions. So, again, I'm
4 going to begin with the Board, and everybody remember to
5 identify themselves. Rod.

6 EWING: Rod Ewing, Board. What I'd like to do is go
7 back to the first question on our list, which is the
8 discussion of the rationale for deep borehole disposal. And
9 the way I'd frame the question is that, of course, as you've
10 described, the emphasis is on smaller DOE waste forms,
11 because that's what will go down the hole.

12 But I'd point out that all of the smaller DOE waste
13 forms would also fit into a mined geologic repository. And,
14 in particular, thinking about the strontium capsules or
15 cesium and strontium capsules, it wasn't many years ago that
16 the proposed disposal pathway for these capsules was near-
17 surface storage and decay. And that was attractive, because
18 the half-life of the cesium-137/strontium-90 is about 30
19 years. And at that time, of course, people asked penetrating
20 questions about, is near-surface disposal safe, and the
21 analysis at least supported that--seemed to support that
22 strategy.

23 So given the short half-lives, the fact that
24 surface disposal or surface storage and decay seemed to work
25 a few years ago, what's the rationale for this effort, which

1 really will take a lot of time and funds?

2 GUNTER: Okay, well, the deep borehole disposal option
3 is not limited to cesium and strontium; so there's other
4 things that could be viable to be disposed of in that manner.
5 How--well, let me say that the cesium and strontium capsules
6 are owned by Environmental Management, which is another part
7 of DOE. I really want to defer to them as to how they want
8 to dispose, whether they want to dispose of it near-surface
9 or let it decay away in near-surface storage. But we're just
10 trying to provide an option to them if they want to get rid
11 of it, because there are some--

12 EWING: But is this an option that's relevant to
13 radionuclides that have very short half-lives?

14 GUNTER: Well, not all of it has short half-lives.

15 EWING: I know. There's cesium-135.

16 GUNTER: Right.

17 EWING: That's why I focused on the strontium-90.

18 GUNTER: Well, that would be really a policy decision as
19 to whether they want to use a deep borehole disposal for the
20 cesium and strontium capsules.

21 EWING: Wouldn't that actually be as well a technical
22 decision?

23 GUNTER: Yeah, and that's what we're focused on. We're
24 trying to provide a technical disposal option, and as part of
25 that we would be developing some cost estimates as we move

1 forward with the design. And that could be presented to
2 them, and they could look at the options available and the
3 cost of disposing it in a borehole or letting it decay on
4 surface.

5 EWING: But just to be clear, are we in agreement that
6 all of these waste forms, small or large, could be disposed
7 of in a geologically mined repository?

8 GUNTER: Yeah, we are in agreement with that, if we had
9 one.

10 EWING: Yeah, right. That's an important qualifier.

11 And the last point or question I want to raise is,
12 you listed a number of criteria that recommend deep borehole
13 disposal, reducing conditions, old groundwaters, areas where
14 there are no natural resources. Would these criteria be
15 usefully applied to geologic repositories as we search for
16 defense and commercial repositories?

17 GUNTER: I would say in general, yes.

18 EWING: Okay. So something like WIPP with natural
19 resources is less attractive according to your criteria.

20 GUNTER: Well, the one with natural resources, it kind
21 of depends on how close they are, and you have to do--in
22 other words, they're not an absolute. You have to do an
23 assessment of what's in the area and whether it's a potential
24 to--

25 EWING: Right, right. Okay, thank you.

1 ZOBACK: Jean.

2 BAHR: Jean Bahr, Board. Looking at your timeline, the
3 decision on whether to go forward with the Field Test
4 Borehole, the larger diameter one, is going to happen during
5 the process of drilling the Characterization Borehole. And,
6 in fact, my guess is that the tests in the Characterization
7 Borehole probably won't be completed by the time you make
8 that decision whether or not to go forward, award the
9 contract for the larger diameter borehole.

10 Do you think you'll know enough at the time of
11 awarding that contract to confirm that you have a suitable
12 site? And if you don't have a suitable site, what happens at
13 that point?

14 GUNTER: Right. So yes is the short answer. I think
15 we'll know enough. We will have drilled roughly halfway
16 through the crystalline basement rock by that time. And the
17 reason we are doing it this way is because of the long lead
18 time for procurement. So we have to get that process
19 started; otherwise, you're going to have a long lag time
20 before you could start drilling the second borehole. I
21 think--

22 BAHR: But what happens if you run into a highly
23 productive fracture zone in the bottom half of the disposal
24 interval?

25 GUNTER: Well, you can always not drill the Field Test

1 Borehole if you made that decision, because you don't really
2 start drilling--let's see, you start drilling the Field Test
3 Borehole July 7th, '17; whereas, you complete the
4 Characterization Borehole February '17. So you have the
5 procurement in process, but that doesn't necessarily mean
6 that you would drill a hole if you found something that
7 couldn't be overcome.

8 BAHR: Thank you.

9 ZOBACK: Paul.

10 TURINSKY: Paul Turinsky, Board. I think this whole
11 program is based on the assumption of homogeneity, that if
12 you go into hard rock, it doesn't matter where you are in the
13 United States. You're going to find more or less the same
14 thing. Is there actually scientific data that supports what
15 I think is a very basic assumption?

16 GUNTER: There is scientific data in some areas where
17 they've done other drillings and corings. So they know--you
18 know, they have a better idea of what the rock is like down
19 there.

20 TURINSKY: And what are they finding? Are they finding
21 that it's extremely similar in all those characteristics?

22 GUNTER: I can't really say whether it's similar all
23 across the U.S., but what I can say is, based on what we're
24 seeing, we think that there is enough data there to indicate
25 that this is a potentially viable option. And what we're

1 trying to do is confirm that with our field test.

2 TURINSKY: Another question. This procurement, what
3 exactly is going to be included in it, and has the criteria
4 already been established, which I assume it has, for the
5 selection? In particular, is the site part of that
6 procurement proposal?

7 GUNTER: The site is part of it. And the RFP list
8 wasn't being requested, and it's asking for a company or
9 partnership to come forward and provide a site that would be
10 suitable to drill and conduct the Deep Borehole Field Test.
11 And we provided a number of what we call guidelines. It's
12 similar to the topics that we've talked about on what would
13 be desirable and what would not be desirable. Those are
14 listed in the RFP.

15 In addition to the site, as far as the RFP, we're
16 asking for a site management company, so someone that would
17 manage the site, manage the drilling, manage day-to-day
18 operations at the site.

19 And then the third major component of the RFP is
20 the actual driller, either a partner with a drilling company
21 or the ability to get access to a driller that would be
22 willing to drill that to those specifications.

23 TURINSKY: Okay. So actually embedded in that is the
24 consent-based process.

25 GUNTER: I would say it's not a true consent-based

1 process in terms of what we're talking about, consent-based
2 siting for an actual waste repository. But there's elements
3 of consent-based in there, because it's a volunteer-type
4 arrangement where it's an open procurement to anyone that's
5 willing to come forward.

6 TURINSKY: Okay. And if I understand it, so the
7 confidence of whoever is volunteering, they've been assured
8 this is not going to be where waste is actually emplaced;
9 that's a separate process.

10 GUNTER: Right. And I think we made that statement in
11 the RFP that this test is not going to use any radioactive
12 materials or waste. And if we did go ahead with a disposal
13 site, that would be then part of the consent-based process.

14 ZOBACK: Efi.

15 FOUFOULA: Efi Foufoula, Board. So the deep borehole
16 disposal program is moving very fast, in my opinion, compared
17 to the nuclear waste disposal time scale we're used to from
18 the past. In the research program, I think it lacks the
19 urgency in addressing basic research questions; that is, we
20 have seen the time schedule here of drilling and so forth,
21 but the basic research questions include the homogeneity of
22 the deep environment and other things that have to be
23 scheduled pretty quickly.

24 So is there a research priorities program that you
25 have developed already that goes beyond the time schedule

1 that we have seen here?

2 GUNTER: Yes. We've laid out a draft testing plan, and
3 the folks that follow me in the presentation are going to go
4 into a lot more details on that. But they have their testing
5 laid out, at least in a draft stage.

6 And I think I mentioned it earlier, but we would
7 then need to finalize that with whoever ultimately becomes
8 the site manager and drilling company; in other words,
9 finalize--we have a drilling and test plan, which lays out
10 all the testing we would do. So we want to work that with
11 whoever is going to actually do the drilling and see what
12 kind of, if any, comments they have or recommendations.

13 ZOBACK: Lee.

14 PEDDICORD: Lee Peddicord from the Board. Referring
15 back to Slide 16 and just trying to work some of the numbers
16 you had in there, is it correct that, again, going back to
17 the cesium/strontium inventory, that--well, or let me ask a
18 question: How many boreholes would you need to accommodate
19 that inventory of capsules?

20 GUNTER: The whole cesium/strontium inventory could be
21 disposed of in one borehole.

22 PEDDICORD: Okay, because your numbers suggest two, but
23 one, two, it's approximately the same thing.

24 GUNTER: I think it's one. I don't know.

25 PEDDICORD: Okay, well, that's fine. Then on Slide 21

1 where you talk about NE-53, the used fuel disposition, a
2 couple of questions come to mind and the next one: How many
3 other programs do you have then in NE-53 besides the borehole
4 program?

5 GUNTER: Well, in terms of program--let's see--NE-53 in
6 used fuel disposition is kind of split in two large programs.
7 One is disposal R&D; the other is transportation/storage R&D.
8 So those are the two large areas. And then within those
9 they're more specific, and it just kind of depends on how you
10 want to break it down.

11 In disposal R&D we actually have it broken out by
12 geologic media, but it's kind of the similar research on all
13 of them. But we have, you know, like, crystalline and clay,
14 shale, and salt.

15 PEDDICORD: So I guess I was trying to understand how
16 many more boxes are there across that line.

17 And then this goes into one of the earlier
18 questions I asked. So in NE-53 how many individuals do you
19 have to give attention to all these programs that you're
20 trying to accomplish?

21 GUNTER: As far as federal staff in NE-53, we've got 15.
22 And then, as I mentioned, the UFD Campaign, as we call it, is
23 all our national laboratory support. So we use most of the
24 laboratories as necessary. So it turns out to be quite a
25 large number of people working on the campaign.

1 PEDDICORD: And last question, a little bit different,
2 but trying to build on the WIPP experience, are you going to
3 have some possibility to just kind of look at risk
4 identification, particularly after you've placed materials
5 down and post-closure and so on, so the thing that you don't
6 think of is going to go wrong doesn't go wrong?

7 GUNTER: Right. We'll do like a risk identification/
8 risk mitigation type of process as far as a safety strategy.
9 We've done some generic type of work in that area, and
10 particularly Ernie Hardin is going to talk about some of the
11 hazard analysis. But a lot of that we're still yet to come
12 until we have our more final design.

13 BRANTLEY: Sue Brantley, Board. As a geologist, I'm
14 very enthusiastic about a borehole. We love boreholes. It's
15 really interesting. But when I was reading the--well, in
16 your slides and then the Deep Borehole Field Test,
17 characterization, science objective, some of the wording was
18 interesting to me.

19 So, for example, the overall goal of the DBFT--
20 that's the Deep Borehole Field Test--is to conduct research,
21 development, and testing to confirm the viability of the DBD
22 concept, so to confirm the viability. And then in your
23 slides it says one of the objectives was to verify deep
24 geological, geochemical, hydrologic conditions. That implies
25 we know it and then we're verifying it. And then another one

1 of your bullets says you want to collect data to confirm
2 expected hydrogeochemical conditions.

3 So this gets really at Paul's point about the
4 heterogeneity or homogeneity, and your verbiage really makes
5 it sound like we know what's out there, we're just confirming
6 it. And that's important. Words are important.

7 So what is that based on? I mean, how many
8 boreholes in crystalline rock to 3 to 5 kilometers are you
9 basing that kind of surety on?

10 GUNTER: I may have to defer that question to our next
11 presenters, but--

12 BRANTLEY: Well, is it one borehole, ten, one hundred, I
13 mean, just order of magnitude?

14 GUNTER: Well, there's a lot of boreholes out there.
15 How many they used in putting together their analysis, I
16 don't remember or don't know.

17 BRANTLEY: Okay. I think it's important when we're
18 using words that make it sound like we know a lot that we
19 could also back it up, you know, hundreds of boreholes or ten
20 boreholes, 3 to 5 kilometers. How many boreholes have been
21 drilled at 17 inches to 3 to 5 kilometers?

22 GUNTER: Well, that one is, I think, zero.

23 BRANTLEY: And then the last--

24 GUNTER: I mean, 17 inches at 5 kilometers.

25 BRANTLEY: At 5 kilometers, right.

1 GUNTER: Right. We're kind of on the--and we did this
2 on purpose, because we want to kind of test the edge of the
3 drilling capability. So we don't want to--I mean, a lot of
4 this is to demonstrate drilling technology. The larger you
5 can drill, the more economical it can be, because the more
6 waste you can put down, so we don't want to drill--we don't
7 need to demonstrate we can drill a small hole, because we
8 know we can do that. We want to demonstrate we can drill a
9 large hole. And there's a lot of judgment that goes into
10 that, but where is the right diameter that you kind of get to
11 the edge of technology that you're demonstrating you can do
12 something versus demonstrating something you already know.

13 BRANTLEY: And then the last question I had is, the
14 characteristics that are emphasized over and over again are
15 geological, geochemical, and hydrological, and microbiology
16 is never mentioned; and we now know that microbiota live to
17 great depths in the earth. So can you tell me why
18 microbiology has not been highlighted in the goals and the
19 objectives and the characterization?

20 GUNTER: I don't know if it's just not listed in the
21 slides or whether it's not in our current plan, but it's
22 something we could look at and follow up on.

23 BRANTLEY: I don't think it was mentioned at all in the
24 science objectives, unless I missed something. But I just
25 thought that was curious.

1 GUNTER: And maybe, like I said, some of the following
2 presentations are going to go into more details on the
3 science objectives, so they may have an answer to that.

4 BRANTLEY: I mean, I'm sure a piece of it is that at 5
5 kilometers at the temperatures we would expect, we wouldn't
6 expect biota still to be alive. But as you go up to that 3
7 to 5 kilometers, we don't really know where we'll see them
8 and where we won't.

9 GUNTER: Okay.

10 ZOBACK: Jerry. And I'd like to say something, to Bret
11 and at least one panelist, so let's try to--

12 FRANKEL: Jerry Frankel on the Board. One of the stated
13 objectives of the field test was to evaluate seal materials,
14 and so we have a seal panel later this afternoon that I'm
15 moderating. Just to facilitate that, can you tell us what
16 you have planned, how you're going to test seals in this
17 field test?

18 GUNTER: Well, some of our seal testing is actually
19 land, and then there's a little bit in the field test. But,
20 here again, we've got a discussion coming up I think next on
21 the sealing, so I'd prefer to defer that.

22 FRANKEL: Okay.

23 ZOBACK: Mary Lou Zoback, Board. I just want to make a
24 few points since you're covering the concept in general and
25 the program in general, and now we're going to move into the

1 test specifically. So one point on one slide was regarding
2 your canisters. A requirement is that they retain integrity
3 until they are loaded and sealed. So I take that to mean you
4 claim no credit in performance assessment for the canisters.
5 They could dissolve immediately within the first three
6 months, and that's fine. So that's an assumption, right?

7 GUNTER: That would be an assumption, yes. I mean,
8 that's what we've done in the past. Whether we use that
9 same--I mean, we could build an argument for how long we
10 think obviously they would--until they degrade.

11 ZOBACK: Okay. That was the assumption stated. I
12 wanted to clarify that.

13 The other two design aspects that I think are
14 important, I want to make sure are clear to everyone, because
15 they're not going to happen in the test borehole. And one is
16 that in the disposal interval in this concept--that is,
17 between 3 and 5 kilometers depth--the casing, the metal
18 liner, will be perforated. And that's specifically so when
19 we drop--not drop--place the canisters there in the ambient
20 fluid, as those canisters heat up, the fluid can escape into
21 the surrounding rock, okay?

22 GUNTER: Correct.

23 ZOBACK: Good. Then the other point is that once the
24 disposal zone is loaded and the seals put on, then the casing
25 from about 3 kilometers depth to 2 kilometers depth is to be

1 removed so that the seals that Jerry's panel is going to
2 worry about will be sealing directly with the rock in that
3 zone; that's correct?

4 GUNTER: Right, uh-huh.

5 ZOBACK: So just going back to the whole concept, we've
6 chosen this method because of the geologic isolation at
7 depth, the favorable geochemical conditions, hydrologic
8 conditions; however, we are putting a hole to the surface,
9 correct?

10 GUNTER: There is a hole to the surface, right.

11 ZOBACK: Okay, thank you.

12 Bret.

13 LESLIE: Bret Leslie, Board staff. Just one question,
14 and you glossed over. You said there are a variety of
15 reasons why deep borehole would be faster. In your reference
16 design slide you said the concept was assuming that it would
17 meet regulatory requirements. Do you even know what the
18 regulatory requirements are? And if they don't exist, how
19 does that make it any faster?

20 GUNTER: Well, they don't explicitly exist, right? So
21 this would require new regulatory requirements that we would
22 work with the NRC. But to do a repository other than Yucca
23 Mountain, which is 10 CFR Part 63, is also going to require
24 new regulatory requirements more than likely. So either way
25 you're going to have more regulatory requirements that have

1 to be put in place. And we think that a borehole would be--
2 potentially could be somewhat simpler.

3 ZOBACK: Nigel.

4 MOTE: Nigel Mote, Board staff. I didn't hear you say
5 anything about the application in the R&D program of
6 monitoring what would happen if there's a canister that
7 breaks, potential for contamination of materials, the
8 borehole, how you'd recover. Can you make a comment about
9 where that fits in the R&D program and if there's anything
10 you can do?

11 And as a context, Monica Regalbuto two weeks ago in
12 a workshop on the clean-up of DOE sites said we have to get
13 away from thinking we can scale up or apply R&D without doing
14 a real demonstration at the right point to demonstrate that
15 we can do what we think we can do. And in that context, I
16 would have thought this was a good opportunity to do
17 something like use fluorescein or some sort of inactive
18 material that you can detect in water flows, gas flows, to
19 simulate what would happen if there's a broken canister.
20 Could you comment on what you're doing, if there's anything
21 that could be added to the program?

22 GUNTER: Okay. So you're referring to if a canister
23 breaches while it's down in the disposal zone, right?

24 MOTE: Well, anywhere. It could be--

25 ZOBACK: Or going down.

1 MOTE: It could be 2 feet down or 2,000 feet--2 meters
2 down, 2,000 meters down, or when a stringer is placed on top
3 of a stringer below and there's a compression fracture or
4 some other breach of a canister under any circumstances.

5 GUNTER: Okay, because I know we're--as part of our
6 hazard analysis, we're doing some work on what can go wrong,
7 you know, a canister gets stuck or drops and that type of
8 thing. I don't know if we have any specific tests built into
9 the program that would simulate that and try to identify what
10 would happen. But, here again, the folks that follow me that
11 are going to talk about the testing program probably know the
12 answer to that.

13 MOTE: Thank you.

14 ZOBACK: Okay. Would you like to identify--

15 PUSCH: Yes.

16 ZOBACK: Yes.

17 PUSCH: My name is Roland Pusch. I come from Sweden,
18 and I have two questions. And the first one you have already
19 touched on, and I've read all the recent papers prior to the
20 presentations here. But that concerns the selection of the
21 suitable position for a very deep hole, second deep hole,
22 including also preparing preceding holes for investigation.
23 My question was, this is, according to modern techniques,
24 something that you easily can predict, approximately at
25 least, what the stress conditions are, I mean, what the

1 variations, how homogeneously horizontal primary stress
2 conditions are, because this is the only really difficult
3 thing, I think, with the--to guarantee stability of the
4 borehole in the construction phase and in the phase when the
5 waste is being placed. So that was one thing. Have you any
6 direct comment on that? You didn't mention that, I think, in
7 your--you have listed some sort of major things that have to
8 be considered. No, I didn't hear that.

9 GUNTER: Well, the drilling of the borehole is going to
10 be one of the challenges, that diameter and that depth,
11 keeping the borehole open as you're drilling until you get
12 the liners set. And that's one of the reasons we're doing
13 the test is to try to confirm that this is a feasible
14 proposal. And in our discussion with drilling companies we
15 don't get the impression that we're too far out in left
16 field, so to speak.

17 PUSCH: The thing I think of is that we have higher up
18 from the--in the upper part 2,000 meters we can have rather
19 large differences in the primary stresses in two major
20 horizontal directions, and this could be investigated and
21 determined well before you would select the point where the
22 test hole should be made. I mean, it should belong to the
23 pre-pre-study of finding a good position for the testing.

24 GUNTER: Right. And some of the guidelines for
25 selecting a site, stress at depth or in between depth and

1 surface, is listed in there, based on what data is available.
2 So we would want to, if possible, avoid areas of high stress.

3 PUSCH: The question I have or is rather a note, with
4 the experience we have from mined repositories at 400- or
5 500-meter depth in granite in Sweden, we know that there is
6 an extreme risk that monitoring controls and gives the
7 results. So that is a big fiasco, actually, when all the
8 seals, the clay seals, were equipped with thermostats, with
9 the pressure cells, with practically anything, because the
10 engineers love to have as many sensors in as possible—the use
11 of cables.

12 And it turned out that water from the surrounding
13 at this depth went along the cables and gave the indication
14 that wetting of the clay was much quicker than it should be,
15 using a theoretical estimate. And it turned out to be so.
16 So you can see for yourself. Be very careful with putting in
17 instrumentation even in the test hole with no radioactive
18 waste. In a repository with radioactive waste, don't put any
19 monitoring instruments inside.

20 GUNTER: Thank you for your comment.

21 ZOBACK: I see we have many more questions, but I also
22 see that we've run into our coffee break. And since this is
23 being webcast, I think we have to try to stay on schedule.
24 So many apologies we didn't get to the questions, and I hope
25 you'll take advantage of the break to ask them directly.

1 Thank you. And we'll be back at 10:15 to stay on
2 schedule.

3 (Whereupon, the meeting was adjourned for a brief
4 recess.)

5 ZOBACK: Okay. If you could take your seats, we'd like
6 to get started again. A lot of empty seats in the front.

7 Okay. After our general introduction to DOE's deep
8 borehole concept and program, we are now going to focus in on
9 the deep borehole test program. And we're going to have--the
10 next hour and a half we have two speakers that are going to
11 be tag-teaming. And I think to be efficient we're going to
12 keep the questions toward the end, and I hope we can get
13 through all the questions, questions of the panelists, other
14 panelists, and the audience as well.

15 So let's try to keep the questions crisp, concise,
16 and if we don't know the answer, "I don't know" is okay.

17 So now we're going to move into the, as I said,
18 Deep Borehole Field Test, a site characterization and design
19 requirements. As I mentioned, there will be two speakers.
20 We're going to begin with Dave Sassani. His background, he
21 is a geology--it is in geology and geochemistry, and right
22 now he is the lead on the site evaluation and data
23 integration for the deep borehole test. He's from Sandia.

24 And he will be joined by Ernest Hardin, also from
25 Sandia. Ernie has a geophysics and hydrology background.

1 He's done modeling on coupled hydrogeologic-geochemical-
2 mechanical processes, and he's the lead on the engineering
3 development for the deep borehole test.

4 So, again, they're going to both be speaking, and
5 we'll have the questions for both of them at the end.

6 Thanks.

7 SASSANI: Thank you. Am I all turned--oh, there we go.
8 Very good.

9 Well, good morning. I want to thank the Board,
10 congratulate them on pulling together such a wonderful group
11 of individuals from all around the world so we can have this
12 discussion here today. I look forward not just to providing
13 a little bit of information in terms of what we are doing
14 with DOE's Deep Borehole Field Test project, but I also look
15 forward to actually becoming connected and getting myself to
16 learn from a lot of the individuals that are here who have
17 some of the largest amount of expertise in some of these
18 areas in the world. So I'm really happy about that.

19 As introduced, that's me. Later on I'll be handing
20 off to Ernest Hardin. Initially we decided that we wouldn't,
21 like, alternate each slide so we had to get up and sit down
22 all the time. So I think we worked it out a little smoother
23 than that.

24 So just to go through, I'm going to talk a little
25 bit about the team for the field test in a little more detail

1 based on Tim's intro. I'll then go in a little bit through
2 the concept again, a little bit more on the hydrogeologic and
3 geochemical information, and I do at least touch on the
4 geomechanical aspects, which are very important from
5 construction of a borehole, keeping it open, and actually
6 successfully fielding either a test in the field of this
7 nature or also a deep borehole disposal borehole.

8 I'll talk about how we are assessing the concept
9 feasibility, and a large part of that is, to start with, the
10 field test; talk about the site characterization approaches
11 to the geohydrologic, geochemical, geomechanical aspects of
12 the system that have been laid out; and I'll talk to how
13 we're going to use that information from the characterization
14 in terms of assessing the feasibility of the concept as well
15 as how do we roll that into safety assessments that you would
16 do for something that is actually a disposal system.

17 After all that, I will turn it over to the more
18 entertaining portion of our presentation today, because Ernie
19 will be doing a multi-media presentation. So if you haven't
20 gotten your popcorn yet, you know, I think there's popcorn in
21 the back? No, Rod?

22 EWING: For sure.

23 SASSANI: Okay. So there will be a couple of videos
24 that Ernie will also show in addition to the presentation,
25 and those will be very fun as well as enlightening.

1 So, in terms of site evaluation characterization,
2 also the engineering component and the data integration, our
3 team members: Tim Gunter, who just spoke, Federal Program
4 Manager at DOE; Lam Xuan is the Program Lead in the technical
5 area; and at Sandia we are the DBFT, the Deep Borehole Field
6 Test.

7 I will try not to do that, Mary Lou. Please yell
8 at me if I read them as letters.

9 ZOBACK: Thank you.

10 SASSANI: Project Technical Lead at Sandia National
11 Laboratories, Bob McKinnon is our Manager; Geoff Freeze is
12 Project Lead and Safety Assessment Lead. This is myself;
13 I've been in charge of laying out the site evaluation work
14 that's ongoing, and we'll be doing data integration once a
15 site is chosen and we actually put together a full-blown
16 geologic framework model of the system.

17 Kris Kuhlman, who I have to give lots of kudos to,
18 is our Site Characterization Lead. He is here in the
19 audience. And if there is extremely detailed questions, Kris
20 is actually the person that would be addressing those. I
21 don't know if we'll have him get up or get down unless we
22 really need the additional information. Kris put together
23 the attachment that was with the RFP on the science
24 requirements and objectives for the Characterization Borehole
25 for the field test project.

1 And then Ernie Hardin is Test Package/Emplacement
2 Engineering Lead on this, and you'll hear more from him on
3 all of that.

4 In addition, we have other laboratory participants.
5 At Los Alamos, covering regional geology, geoscience, and
6 site characterization, Frank Perry is the lead there, and
7 he's been helping us very much in that region; also, Lawrence
8 Berkeley National Lab with Jens Birkholzer, Jim Houseworth,
9 and now Pat Dobson, since Jim has just retired, for
10 geoscience and site characterization.

11 We have support from Oak Ridge National Lab on
12 surface site characteristics. They have a very nice GIS
13 (geographic information system) tool called OR-SAGE that
14 they've used for evaluating siting of various reactor
15 facilities and things like that. Idaho National Laboratory
16 also provides a web visualization interface support for
17 geoscience data, and they interface pretty much directly with
18 Los Alamos and Frank on the regional geoscience databases.
19 Pacific Northwest National Laboratory has been helping us
20 with the engineering design support as well, and we continue
21 to look for getting them involved in other aspects of the
22 site.

23 So this is our team, but by no means is it
24 everybody that works on it, not even at Sandia. We have
25 other folks in the audience like Pat Brady, who has worked on

1 this for at least five years at this point. Pat's been a lot
2 of the conceptual driving force behind the geoscience
3 aspects; Payton Gardner, who was a Sandian up till just this
4 past summer and is now at the university up in Missoula,
5 Montana, so he is one of our technical leads or was one of
6 Sandia's technical leads on tracers and groundwater
7 provenance and interactions. So Payton is also here. And
8 Steve Pye is a drilling expert that we have contracted, who
9 is also helping us with our understanding in those areas.

10 So I didn't even know that was in there like that.
11 Anyway, so here's a disposal concept in terms of safety and
12 feasibility considerations. This came up a little bit
13 earlier, long-term waste isolation (hydrogeochemical
14 characteristics). So we've seen a disposal zone crystalline
15 basement within 2,000 meters of the surface. That at least
16 is relatively common. We have a pretty good understanding of
17 depth at crystalline basement. It's one of the few
18 parameters where maybe we have a lot of data, but that's
19 pretty well known. So our idea is that it would actually be
20 fairly easy to go pick areas with at least that
21 characteristic.

22 But in addition to that, the deep groundwater in
23 the crystalline basement, well, it can have long residence
24 times. There are studies that show million-year-plus ages
25 for the waters, waters coming in pre-Pleistocene, and looking

1 very old. It also can be highly saline and geochemically
2 reducing, or I would say geochemically reduced or reducing,
3 depending on what the mineralogy is in the host rock, which
4 is where most of your capacity for doing reduction lies. And
5 those things enhance sorption and limit solubilities of many
6 radionuclides.

7 It also can have density stratification in that
8 salinity. You can see in some studies from the Canadian
9 Shield work that's been done by some of the folks in the
10 audience here you get to 50,000 parts per million within a
11 couple of kilometers and possibly up to greater than 300,000
12 parts per million deeper into the crust. And those salinity
13 stratifications also have a little bit of a compositional
14 variation, become more calcium-rich brines at depth, at least
15 from the little bit of data we have. Kola Peninsula also
16 shows that.

17 So, in any case, that's important for a few
18 reasons, but one of them is that that stratification can
19 oppose any thermally-induced upward groundwater circulation,
20 which may drive diffusion and possibly slight advection of
21 radionuclides in an actual disposal facility.

22 And then the crystalline basement can have very low
23 permeability, which can limit flow and transport out into the
24 host rock; and, in fact, these can be down on the order in
25 crystal and granitic rocks of 10^{-19} m² to about

1 10⁻⁷ Darcy, I think. And those have been measured. But they
2 are also in many cases--the work that's been done in some of
3 the boreholes, the sites that have been chosen are not--
4 although some of the geothermal ones--some of the sites that
5 have been chosen and worked on, many of them are not all of
6 the types of characteristics we would choose for this system.
7 Some of them have--there are a lot of structural complexity,
8 things like the KTB hole in Germany and also the Siljan Ring.

9 And then there's other aspects for the geothermal
10 exploration drilling that's been done very deep in the
11 granitic rocks. You have very high geothermal flow. You
12 have a lot of heat. That's what's being looked for. We want
13 to stay away from those areas. But looking across the board
14 at these, each of them has some of the components that we
15 would be looking at.

16 So this Tim covered a little bit. I'm just going
17 to go through it real quick. It's sometimes better to look
18 at what are the types of conditions you don't want for one of
19 these deep systems. And for us, we don't want interconnected
20 high-permeability zones, shear zones and fractures, from the
21 lower portion, the waste disposal interval, to the shallow
22 aquifers or the surface. In many cases it may not be readily
23 observable to know those things until you drill the hole.
24 But there's methods for even looking down the hole,
25 geochemical methods that may tell you if there's something

1 even close by that you haven't intersected that could affect
2 that. So we'll be looking at those kinds of things.

3 You don't want a high degree of heterogeneity in
4 the crystalline basement. I like to say it this way, because
5 I am a geologist, and we're not going to go find some big,
6 vast, 50-kilometer, a homogeneous piece of rock. We're going
7 to look for rocks that have the least heterogeneity. That's
8 what we're focusing on.

9 At depths of greater than 3 kilometers in the
10 disposal interval you don't want to see young meteoric
11 groundwater. That's not a good sign. You don't want to see
12 low-salinity oxidizing groundwater. These things indicate
13 that you've got flux that's getting down deep into this
14 crystalline basement rock. That is not what you want to see.
15 Those are observations that you would say this is not where
16 we would choose to put an actual disposal hole.

17 You don't want economically exploitable natural
18 resources. You want to be away from any kind of ore
19 deposits. You'd like to find a really barren granite that
20 has maybe a little bit of magnetite and a little hematite in
21 it, but nothing else of any viability.

22 You don't want to see any significant upward
23 gradient in the fluid potential. You don't want
24 overpressurized conditions, because you don't want flux going
25 upwards. And you don't really want any high geothermal heat

1 flow, not just because it's a natural resource, but also
2 because it makes it very difficult to drill the hole and to
3 do things in the system, and it can also generate a
4 thermally-driven upward flux.

5 So, additionally, high differential horizontal
6 stresses, as was brought up by the gentleman from Sweden,
7 those are very undesirable for borehole completion and
8 disposal operations. This is an area--and Mary Lou knows
9 much better than I do--there are vast portions of the country
10 where in the crystalline basement rocks you don't have an
11 enormous amount of information directly to evaluate this.

12 And so this is one area where we have to do our
13 best. And, in fact, the Characterization Borehole gives us
14 an opportunity to characterize explicitly what's going on
15 here, and that would be part of making this decision about
16 whether or not you would proceed with putting in a Field Test
17 Borehole.

18 You know, there's a lot of ways that you can have
19 success in a field test of this nature. It doesn't have to
20 be every particular aspect. There can be aspects that are
21 successful and aspects that--you know, maybe we do have young
22 meteoric groundwater at the site. Okay, well, we can
23 characterize that, and it's not a disposal site, so it sort
24 of takes off the table looking at these salinity gradients in
25 explicit detail, but it doesn't invalidate the rest of the

1 testing. However, if we had a Characterization Borehole that
2 we could not keep open, that was unstable, that would
3 definitely be something that would tell us we're not going to
4 put a Field Test Borehole here.

5 So absent these unfavorable conditions, the
6 potential scenarios for radionuclide release to the biosphere
7 in the deep borehole disposal concept would be thermally
8 driven groundwater flow from waste heat or simply diffusive
9 flux through the borehole seals and/or along the disturbed
10 rock zone annulus. This is important, and we'll get to talk
11 about this more in Panel #6, which I'll be on, where we talk
12 about the different amounts of reliance put on different
13 barriers in the system. These barriers, the borehole seals,
14 are part of the engineered barrier system which is relied
15 upon in this concept. They aren't the primary reliance, but
16 they are part of it.

17 So geologic conditions, what do we like? Well, we
18 like reduced or reducing conditions in the geosphere, rock
19 and water system included, not just looking at the water.
20 Water sampling to see if the water is actually reduced at
21 these depths could be very tricky and could be very difficult
22 and a very big challenge to get uncontaminated samples. So
23 we will not just simply sample fluids, but we're going to
24 have rock samples, because if the fluids in their major
25 element chemistry show they are largely rock equilibrated,

1 then we can rely on the mineralogy in the rock to give us
2 information about how reduced or reducing is the system.

3 In addition, steels in the borehole will provide
4 some reduction capacity either directly through reaction with
5 radionuclides once they're in solution or through generation
6 of hydrogen gas, which can also be a reductant in the system.

7 Rock-dominated system at depth is what we'd like to
8 see. We'd like major elements at depth increasing with
9 brines at depth--again, stratified--evolving to these calcium
10 chloride fluids, which will look like they are dominated by
11 rock equilibration; reactions of the feldspars at depth under
12 low-grade metamorphic conditions; forcing the fluid to evolve
13 to a more calcium fluid; generating things like zeolites and
14 clays even in the granites; and then also affecting things
15 like stable isotopes, radiogenic isotopes, and noble gases,
16 looking at those to try to get some indication of the
17 isolated nature of the fluids in the system.

18 For a subset of the waste forms and the
19 radionuclides, a subset of those, which are redox-sensitive,
20 this can generate very much lower degradation rates; it can
21 lower solubility-limited concentrations for some of those
22 radionuclides; and it can increase sorption coefficients. So
23 those are some of the performance aspects that we would get
24 out of this kind of a system.

25 The stratification of salinity, in addition, that

1 gradient opposes the upward flow, as I said, but it also
2 reduces or eliminates consideration of colloidal transport.
3 As you go to very high ionic strengths, colloids become--
4 well, they're metastable, unstable. They actually flocculate
5 out, and so your load is very, very small, if any at all. So
6 those are very good things.

7 In addition, the overall aspect of this system, if
8 we see it as such, if it is this isolated system where you
9 don't have a lot of fluid influx, that also provides a good
10 constraint on solubility limitations, because if you have a
11 diffusive environment, a calm environment, that's exactly
12 where you're likely to hit your solubility limits, even for
13 elements that are not redox-sensitive, as long as there's
14 phases in the bulk chemistry that can precipitate and have a
15 low enough solubility limit.

16 Geohydrologic considerations, again, no large-scale
17 connected pathways. So we will look for these in the
18 Characterization Borehole. We look for these things as site
19 selection criteria also, what's the regional structure look
20 like, and what's the local structure look like, and what do
21 we think in terms of whether or not we would be seeing any of
22 this--again, we're seeking lower heterogeneity in the
23 crystalline basement--low permeability of the crystalline
24 basement at depth; and, again the evidence that these fluids
25 are ancient and isolated in nature within the crystalline

1 basement groundwaters. The salinity gradients, to do what
2 they do, provide that density resistance to upward flow and
3 then major element and isotopic indications of compositional
4 equilibration with the rock.

5 So if this system is dominated by that
6 equilibration with the rock and we can demonstrate that the
7 fluids are isolated and are ancient based on isotopic work
8 and noble gases, then we have an idea that there is minimal
9 recharge going on in this deep crystalline system. So you
10 have a system which is primarily diffusion-dominated.

11 So somebody asked earlier how many boreholes.
12 Well, you know, are there thousands of them in deep
13 crystalline rock? No. But what I'm showing here is a plot,
14 which was taken from Beswick 2008, and this is the plot upon
15 which the selection of a 17-inch diameter at 5 kilometers
16 depth is based.

17 So these red dots are all boreholes, deep drilled
18 in crystalline rocks. The numbers you can't read at the top
19 here are diameter of the borehole in centimeters, so that's
20 half a meter right there. And the numbers that you can't
21 read on this side are depth in meters, and that is 6,000
22 meters right there. That's 6 kilometers. So 5 kilometers
23 depth and 44 centimeters is right here, which is our target
24 deep borehole concept for the diameter of the hole at 5
25 kilometers. And you can see there's a number of them. Below

1 about 5 kilometers there's fewer.

2 Here's the Kola Russian borehole, which went to
3 12.2 kilometers, the deepest in the world. That was 8-1/2
4 inches in diameter at 12.2 kilometers. Pretty impressive.

5 You can see these guys in here include the KTB
6 borehole in Germany, and that's an acronym, and that stands
7 for Kontinentales Tiefbohrprogramm der Bundesrepublik. It's
8 much easier for me to say KTB hole. That's the hole in
9 Germany, and that is another very deep one. That's 9.1
10 kilometers, and it's 6-1/2 inches in diameter at depth.

11 So that gives you some feel. Now, that's Beswick
12 2008. There was a Beswick et al. 2014 recently published
13 that indicated that you could probably go--our concept is 44
14 centimeters. He was saying, yeah, you can probably go to 60
15 centimeters at 5 kilometers with current drilling technology.
16 So, in fact, within that six-year period, we are now within
17 the envelope, not on the edge of it.

18 So I don't know much else about drilling holes.
19 Steve Pye does, though, if we have questions about it. So,
20 in any case, that's some of the previous work.

21 And what are we going to do to actually evaluate
22 the feasibility? And, hence the word "evaluate," not
23 confirm--not confirm our assumptions, which is, I think,
24 where some of that wording came from. But this is actually
25 evaluating the feasibility of this concept. Well, we want to

1 select a suitable site. They occur everywhere, right? It's
2 all over the place, all over the continental U.S. There's
3 all kinds of rocks that we can put this in, so we ought to
4 have a fairly straightforward time selecting a site. That's
5 a little tongue-in-cheek. We'll see how successful we are.
6 We're in the process of doing that currently with the RFP
7 procurement process.

8 Part of it is to design, drill, and construct the
9 Characterization Borehole to its requirements. These holes
10 are being conducted and put in place for research purposes
11 relative to the deep borehole, but to look at targeted
12 science and then the possibility of doing some other R&D
13 associated with it, as long as that gets fit in with the
14 targeted science for the project.

15 We want to collect the data in the Characterization
16 Borehole to find all those--and, again, here it says
17 "confirm." That shouldn't be confirm; that should be
18 evaluate or quantify--with acceptable uncertainty what we
19 expect would be the hydrogeological conditions for the site
20 we select. So, in this case, once we select that site, we
21 have all of the background information about that site. It
22 doesn't mean we have all the data you might like to have, but
23 we've looked at as much as exists.

24 So then you want to design and develop the surface
25 handling and emplacement systems. You want to verify hazard

1 analyses that--you want to verify through hazard analyses
2 that you can do this in a safe manner with sufficiently low
3 risk. There is no radiological materials in the field test.
4 You want to demonstrate that handling, and you want to do
5 emplacement and retrieval/removal operations in the Field
6 Test Borehole.

7 We have laboratory studies that we're looking at
8 engineered materials under representative downhole
9 conditions. Once we get those conditions, we'll be putting
10 those in place. We're starting some of those up this year on
11 some of the seals materials to look in general at what can be
12 done for something like clays, altering the zeolites at these
13 slightly higher temperatures, and cesium incorporation into
14 those.

15 We want to do subsystem analyses and a post-closure
16 safety assessment to quantify uncertainties, to demonstrate
17 the understanding we have of the key processes, and to
18 evaluate the safety of the concept.

19 Cost analysis is in here. This was mentioned
20 earlier. Ernie will talk a little bit about this. I can't
21 tell you anything about it.

22 And we want to synthesize all of the above elements
23 into a comprehensive and transparent evaluation of the
24 feasibility of the concept.

25 So those are the primary aspects of actually

1 conducting the field test.

2 This block diagram, I was going to walk through
3 those. I'll just point out, here is the Burj Khalifa Tower
4 in Dubai. This is not part of the surface facilities. It's
5 just on here for scale. It's 830 meters tall. It is not
6 actually only half as tall as the drill rig. These guys are
7 not to scale.

8 So there's design aspects. We want to evaluate a
9 site. We want to characterize the basement fluids. We want
10 to characterize the overlying sediment fluids and hydrologic
11 conditions, although those are a lower priority, because the
12 techniques for doing that are very, very well understood by
13 tens of thousands of holes that have been worked.

14 We want to characterize the disturbed rock zone all
15 along the borehole. This will probably be the most likely
16 pathway for any kind of radionuclide transport.

17 Design and test waste packages; develop and handle
18 and emplace and remove waste packages; do emplacement hazard
19 analyses about packages getting stuck in the hole and having
20 to be fished out; evaluate the waste package, the waste form,
21 the casing, cement, and seal materials; design a seal system;
22 do an in situ thermal test as part of the characterization;
23 and assess the post-closure safety.

24 So those will all be synthesized, and no nuclear
25 material will be used or disposed of in these holes.

1 This characterization is very different from mined
2 waste repositories. There is more isolation, so you do less
3 site mapping, although you could view the downhole camera
4 recording as the mapping of the borehole. There is single-
5 phase fluid flow, less steep pressure gradients.

6 In terms of oil and gas or mineral exploration,
7 there's a much lower permeability, generally crystalline
8 basement versus sedimentary rocks. We're avoiding
9 mineralization, avoiding overpressure, and for geothermal
10 systems we are avoiding high heat flow.

11 So this is a summary of what we would be doing in
12 the Characterization Borehole, kind of as an overview. This
13 is the diagram of the borehole shown here. Here's the
14 2-kilometer mark where we would have crystalline basement
15 starting at least by 2 kilometers. This is from Kris
16 Kuhlman's 2015 report that is attached to the RFP. It was
17 sent out on July 9th or put out by DOE on July 9th.

18 And there's a number of tests indicated here at
19 various locations throughout the disposal zone and the seal
20 zone, but we'd be looking to be doing downhole borehole
21 geophysics. We'd be coring, getting cuttings and rock flower
22 analysis, virtually continuously or semi-continuously every 3
23 meters as the mud came out of the hole. And we'd be doing
24 mineralogy and petrology on those rock samples and rock
25 flower samples, XRD for quick mineralogical analysis, and

1 we'd be collecting fluid samples from some of those cores as
2 well, looking to get bulk composition, things like salinity,
3 look at the composition of the fluid for how rock-
4 equilibrated it is.

5 And then there's sampling-based profiles, things
6 like fluid density, temperature, major ions. This is all,
7 like, from the drilling fluid to take a look at what's going
8 on as you drill the hole; pump samples from high-permeability
9 regions to do water sampling; and then samples primarily from
10 core water samples in low-permeability regions.

11 Drilling parameters and logging, the mud fluids,
12 the solids, the dissolved gases, continuous monitoring of
13 those, looking at things like torque on the bit, weight on
14 the bit, etc., just to keep monitoring the drilling, because
15 we want very straight holes. We want very little deviation
16 in these holes. And then testing-based profiles, things like
17 static formation pressure, formation hydraulic/transport
18 properties, and then looking at the in situ stress via things
19 like doing hydrofrac tests and looking at breakouts and
20 mapping those in the hole.

21 And then a little bit more detail in terms of
22 environmental tracers. This diagram just shows you some of
23 the ways these tracers can either be formed in the atmosphere
24 via cosmic rays and come into groundwaters, which penetrate
25 down into portions of the crust, but they are also generated

1 in radioactive decay throughout the crustal rocks.
2 Particularly in things like granite, you can get a lot of
3 these building up and particular helium-4, which is a very
4 good indicator.

5 So what we would be looking to do--and the colors
6 over here, the red colors basically indicate what I would say
7 is our low-hanging fruit. These are the pieces of the puzzle
8 that we would hang our most reliance on being able to get
9 good measures of and can tell us the information about do the
10 groundwaters look like they're isolated, rock-dominated, very
11 ancient waters or not. But we aren't just going for the
12 low-hanging fruit here, because part of this whole test is to
13 look at characterization methodologies and then at some point
14 come up with what is the most bang-for-the-buck, cost-
15 effective way to do the characterization of the site and get
16 the data that you need as easily and comprehensively as
17 possible.

18 So noble gases, again focusing on helium, stable
19 water isotopes, oxygen and hydrogen, some atmospheric
20 radioisotope tracers, things like krypton-81 has been used.
21 It's got about a 230,000-year half-life or 250,000-year half-
22 life, one of those two, and it's usually indicative of
23 meteoric fluids. But, in fact, in systems where you get a
24 lot of formation of this in highly radioactive systems, they
25 are nucleogenic reactions; they're not radiogenic reactions.

1 If it's well sealed, you can build up krypton-81. It's been
2 sampled, and if it's waters ran--waters from deep in the mine
3 where huge values have been found much, much higher than
4 atmospheric. And those indicate waters that have been
5 isolated in that host rock for at least the lifetime of the
6 krypton, anyway, things like uranium-238/234 ratios,
7 strontium ratios, and the long-term data where we want to try
8 to map out what the water provenance is, look at flow
9 mechanisms and isolation, evaluating the minerals or fluids
10 in the pores, the fluids in the fractures, and effectively
11 come up with an assessment of how leaky is this deep
12 crystalline basement system.

13 So the fluid sample quality and quantity will be a
14 focus. The ones in red tend to leave much smaller fluid
15 samples to get good analyses from.

16 So for hydrogeologic testing, we want to get
17 hydrologic property profiles. We want to look at the static
18 formation pressure, measure permeability or compressibility,
19 doing pumping/sampling in high-permeability zones or pulse
20 testing in low-permeability zones, and then doing some
21 borehole tracer testing. Single-well injection-withdrawal or
22 vertical dipole, kind of shown here. You can do single-well
23 injection-withdrawal, or you can set up a number of packers,
24 introduce a tracer here, and pump it out here to get measures
25 of how permeable primarily is this disturbed rock zone around

1 the borehole. That'll help us understand the transport
2 pathways.

3 Hydraulic fracturing tests, again, to look at the
4 stress magnitudes and try to determine what is the
5 differential horizontal stress that would go along, again,
6 with mapping of breakouts, which give you some of that
7 information in terms of directionality and magnitude.

8 And then we have a borehole heater test that we
9 would look to field with a surrogate canister with a heater
10 in the crystalline basement to try to get after the
11 thermomechanical properties and the thermohydrologic response
12 of that system. That would be over about, I think, a 5-meter
13 interval.

14 So, going back to this slide, I'm just going to
15 pull all these up, because what will we use all this data
16 for? Well, there's a number of things we would use it for,
17 specifically to look at those particular properties of the
18 system, but also to then inform the post-closure safety
19 assessment of the entire system and to build a safety
20 assessment, a performance assessment, of the site that is
21 actually based on the properties of the site and evaluate it
22 quantitatively.

23 In addition to that, there is a large amount of
24 these demonstration and design aspects, evaluation of the
25 emplacement hazard, design of seal systems, which we are not

1 going to field seals in these holes at this point, but that
2 may be a follow-on project that we are going to be doing
3 laboratory studies in terms of sealing materials. And the in
4 situ thermal test would be down in the disposal region.

5 So at this point I'm going to hand it off for Ernie
6 Hardin to talk much more about these design aspects, and I'll
7 be around for questions.

8 HARDIN: Well, good morning. There really are a lot of
9 luminaries of nuclear waste disposal technology in this room,
10 and I'm proud to be here. And I'm also happy to have the
11 opportunity to talk about work we've done in the past year on
12 the engineering side of the Deep Borehole Field Test.

13 So my slides are more in the burst mode.

14 So these are the elements of the big picture that
15 I'm going to talk to you about: Developing and testing
16 systems for handling and emplacing and retrieving waste
17 packages; performing emplacement hazard analysis to
18 understand the risks involved; work towards a reference
19 design or improvement of the reference design for a seal
20 system; to actually design and test the waste packaging
21 concepts; and to evaluate seal materials for use in that seal
22 design.

23 So I put this--this is a schematic of the Field
24 Test Borehole depth and casing plan. It's entirely
25 consistent with the one that Tim Gunter showed you earlier

1 this morning, redrawn, and the message here I wanted to give
2 you was something Tim also said, which is that I cannot
3 understate the importance of a continuous casing pathway for
4 emplacing waste from the surface all the way down to total
5 depth. And, in addition, this upper section, 3 kilometers,
6 is a tie-back, meaning that it's hung from the surface, and
7 it's not cemented at all, and it could be removed if we were
8 to stick one or more waste packages in it. It's a method of
9 last resort available to use for recovering from that
10 condition.

11 So this is what I'm going to talk about. We've
12 gone through objectives. Next I want to present to you some
13 emplacement system options and particularly starting with the
14 Spent Fuel Test-Climax; I want to talk about wireline
15 emplacement, which is based on that, and then go on to drill
16 string emplacement, which is where we've been for the past 20
17 or 25 years; and then briefly touch on some packaging
18 concepts and then describe a cost-risk study that we
19 performed with the intent of justifying a recommendation for
20 one or the other of these emplacement methods. And our
21 recommendation is that the wireline could be, in fact,
22 favorable. And, finally, I'm going to identify some
23 remaining questions in the conceptual design process and also
24 present where we are with the sealing technology R&D program.

25 So this photograph is from the Climax site, circa

1 1982, I guess. And Wes Patrick wrote the final report on
2 this project, and he's here as a panelist. What you see here
3 is the flatbed-mounted shielded transport cask. It's double-
4 ended, and there is a waste canister inside of it. And the
5 wireline then has engaged the canister.

6 This gadget sticking out is a special cable that
7 was developed for that project. It is a load-sensing device;
8 and if for any reason the canister were to go into free-fall,
9 spring loaded arms would come out and arrest the canister
10 against the inside of the casing. So this method, I don't
11 think, was ever needed and in practice of the test.

12 The wireline was interesting on this. This is sort
13 of a relic of the test site days. It's a 36-conductor
14 wireline with about 9/10 of an inch diameter. In other
15 words, it's similar to a wireline that's used in the
16 petroleum oil and gas logging business.

17 So, based on that, these are some little screen
18 shots that show some of the major features of the wireline
19 emplacement concept as we understand it. So we start with a
20 headframe. It's safer to use a headframe than a crane, so
21 we're trying to eliminate possible modes of failure that
22 could contribute to dropping the package or otherwise
23 producing a hazard. And this pillbox affair here is our
24 rendition of a shield that would be needed.

25 Now, the borehole will probably have a blowout

1 protector stack on it. Blowout protectors are going to be
2 required for our drilling by the state regulatory
3 authorities. Even though the circumstances of
4 hydrogeological conditions that we're looking for would never
5 require--they're not going to have an overpressure condition;
6 so, in principle, a blowout protector is not needed. But we
7 need to design our emplacement system so it can accommodate
8 that if it's required.

9 So, with that said, we conceivably are lowering
10 gamma-emitting waste packages down through the blowout
11 protector, which is not designed for shielding purposes, so
12 we need some sort of shielding. If necessary, we could
13 reconstruct the wellhead so that those were subgrade.

14 So, Jason, could you roll video number one, please?

15 So we did these primarily for the benefit of an
16 expert panel that we convened to review and go through all of
17 this. So it shows a waste package arriving in the double-
18 ended shielded cask. This could be either a multi-purpose
19 cask, or it could be one solely for transferring from a
20 transportation cask to the wellhead. You saw the impact
21 limiters disappear as if by magic.

22 This lift right here is up about ten feet and, in
23 fact, could be the riskiest part of this entire proposition,
24 what you just saw.

25 We actually started, Wes, by simulating the spent

1 fuel test. Our graphic artist made a video of that if you
2 should ever require it. That's why some of the components
3 look familiar.

4 So that's a shield plug right there, and we're
5 going to engage and lift slightly so we can open sliding
6 doors. And we see the need for a redundant closure mechanism
7 here. It prevents a number of different single-point
8 failures. So here we've labeled some of the components I've
9 told you about. The upper cask door is a pop-top variety,
10 because it can be actuated externally and therefore repaired,
11 and it's obvious when it's open.

12 And now we lower away. Now, one of the reasons why
13 this concept works, I think, is because there is a relatively
14 new wireline technology available from a major vendor--I
15 won't specify who that is--but it's an iteration, an
16 evolution, of the classic double-armored steel design that's
17 completely blocked with a high-temperature polymer, and it
18 eliminates many of the problems with conventional wireline.

19 And now the video shows that we're stacking waste
20 packages one on top of another. And the limit of forty is a
21 soft limit. We could do ten or we could do a hundred, but
22 it's mainly to protect the condition of that lowermost
23 package under the static load of the others.

24 So that's it. And now you can kill it anytime.
25 There we go. And put me back in control. Good. So I think

1 that's it. All right.

2 So the alternative that we evaluated is a so-called
3 drill string emplacement method, and this is a schematic of a
4 drill rig that shows kind of what we're talking about. This
5 is just like the schematic that you saw from the Woody-Clyde
6 report from 1983 this morning in one of Tim's slides.

7 So we start with a drill rig which is large enough
8 to do the job. It'll handle triple pipe stands. It'll have
9 a hook load limit of at least a half a million pounds, maybe a
10 million pounds. So it's a fairly large rig. It's going to
11 sit up off the ground on a substructure that's maybe 25 or 30
12 feet tall. And we need that room because the game plan here
13 is to assemble a string of waste packages threaded together,
14 and they come in in the cask. They need to be assembled
15 below the cask obviously. So we don't want to lift the cask
16 up onto the rig floor. There would be some horrific
17 shielding issues down here if we did that.

18 So, anyway, the geometry sort of draws itself. And
19 so what you end up with is a sub-basement here where you'd
20 have the blowout protectors stacked and also this other
21 equipment, tongs and slips and so forth that would be used to
22 assemble or disassemble, if necessary, strings of waste
23 packages.

24 And these screen shots here, similar to the others.
25 I may not have a chance to show you in the video that we need

1 some sort of a device for translating the upended waste
2 package under the rig and depositing it over the wellhead,
3 and there are various ways of doing that. We didn't get into
4 the details.

5 This picture here shows a machine or device on the
6 rig floor that's called an iron roughneck. It makes and
7 breaks out joints between drill pipe, so it's an automated
8 feature of many modern rigs. And the rig basement will look
9 like this. And I think we're probably shortly ready to roll
10 the video. Here again we would opt for using some of the
11 blowout preventer apparatus to provide a backup in case a
12 waste package was dropped somewhere near the surface, and
13 we'd have to deal with the mud. I won't get into the
14 details, but the mud equipment is all going to be on the
15 surface, and we're going to have to evacuate the annulus down
16 here below.

17 So, Jason, I think it's time.

18 So this video is quite a bit longer.

19 (Pause.)

20 So that cask there would have to have a--to handle
21 the cesium capsules we would probably have to have a wall
22 thickness on the order of 10 to 12 inches of steel, and that
23 makes it weigh in a configuration like this more than 30
24 tons, but it would be road legal.

25 Now, we imagined waste packages being delivered to

1 a remote site at the rate of about one per day. I'll talk
2 about that a little bit more in the assumptions on the study
3 that we've done.

4 I think being a graphic artist would be fun. He
5 makes a whole bunch of the substructure disappear right here.

6 Okay, now we're located below the--directly below
7 the drill rig. We go down and engage the waste package with
8 a pipe string. This string right here would be engineered so
9 that it didn't have the strength to pull the package out of
10 the cask against its restraints. That's real important. We
11 call that the breakaway sub in our report.

12 So we have to lift it slightly in order to get the
13 sliding doors open. There's another set of doors that would
14 have to open into the basement. And right here could be the
15 limiting drop for the drill string method, dropping it in
16 air, having the package accelerate through 10 or 15 feet.

17 So this would be an integrated system that the
18 package would have features that engaged one or more of the
19 blowout preventer rams as a backup gripper. Most of the
20 gripping would be done by a set of tongs here, which is just
21 an elaborate wedge affair. The power tongs are based on
22 hundred-year-old drilling technology.

23 (Pause.)

24 I misspoke. I said the power slips are. What you
25 just saw was the tongs engaging the package string. Now

1 we're going to unthread the pipe string above it and get
2 ready for another package to be added to that string.

3 So, again, we made the videos for the benefit of
4 our subject matter expert panel, and I wanted to make sure
5 everybody had a common understanding of the complexity
6 involved in some of these operations.

7 So at this stage of the emplacement process,
8 dropping something is the principal hazard.

9 PEDDICORD: Would there be extreme radiation coming
10 up?

11 HARDIN: There would be--there would be some. And
12 with that shield plug there, you limit a whole lot of that,
13 but there would still be some. That shield plug idea is, of
14 course, what's done with packaging spent fuel in pools.

15 So my graphic artist was perfectly willing to
16 extend this so that all forty packages were threaded
17 together. I think we got him down to three. He really
18 worked hard on this. He told me this is the hardest project
19 he'd ever done.

20 So then you'll see the--the complete string will be
21 captured in the basement there, and we'll start threading in
22 not more packages but drill pipe. Now, with a triple-stand
23 rig, the stands of pipe are about 90 feet long; and so it'll
24 take on average 138 of them to lower the waste package string
25 into place. So that's 138 pipe joints that have to be made

1 up, and that's 138 lifts.

2 Now, the oil drilling business knows how to do
3 lifts reliably. What you see here is a device called a
4 J-slot that is used to engage an assembly and lower it in the
5 hole and then disengage. There are other devices with
6 potentially more reliability and more capacity, more
7 strength.

8 As I said, the lifting on a drill rig is a well-
9 understood process, and they use something called an
10 elevator, which is what you see here. The drill pipe has
11 upset ends so that the elevator gets a real good grip, but
12 there is a potential single-point failure there. You go
13 through the entire system and find all the single-point
14 failures and see what you can do engineering-wise to mitigate
15 them or eliminate them. The pipe joints would be made up
16 automatically. This is actually much safer from an
17 occupational safety point of view than having men on the rig
18 for slips and gauge, elevator releases. So this is exactly
19 the process that would be repeated 138 times.

20 You know, there are numbers out there for the
21 hazard and reliability associated with lifts, and we think
22 that if you have a standard rigging setup, you're doing
23 repeated lifts, you could probably get 10^{-5} . And if you have
24 a piece of equipment like this, which is highly engineered
25 and has an inspection schedule, you might be able to get

1 10^{-6} ; that's drops per lift. Whereas, if you just go into
2 randomly lift a large, heavy object up, some particular size,
3 but you have to make up the rating for it, the reliability is
4 more like 10^{-4} .

5 So there you have a package stream being lowered
6 into place one stand at a time. So you'll see the J-slot
7 device disengaged and then the string withdrawn the same way
8 it was inserted.

9 So I think you can kill that.

10 Okay. So let me touch on some of the packaging
11 questions that we looked at. The reference packaging design
12 that Tim showed you this morning was done as a straw man to
13 see just how easily it could be done, how cheaply and easily
14 could we package certain waste forms for borehole disposal.
15 And so that design relied on off-the-shelf American Petroleum
16 Institute schedule tubing and connectors.

17 The safety factor on something like that is fairly
18 low, so we set about to understand if we could do that with a
19 higher safety factor. API safety factors are typically on
20 the order of 1.3 or 1.4 against crushing or burst. And so in
21 our case we were principally concerned about the crushed
22 strength of the package at the bottom hole pressure, which we
23 calculate to be around 9600 Psi.

24 And so we want a factor of safety--I mean, you want
25 it as high as you can get it. We wanted an FOS of 2. That's

1 comparable to a value that's used in certain pipeline
2 regulatory applications. If you go too high, of course, it
3 gets too heavy, and the material thickness replaces your
4 waste, and so you get less efficient disposal.

5 The concept that you see here then would use a
6 higher grade or higher strength of API tubing friction-welded
7 to subs that are machined. So this material is called P110.
8 It's really one of the 4140 series steels. It's medium
9 carbon. It's not very friendly to work with, so we'd have to
10 be careful about how we did that. You want the welds to be
11 separated from some of the more sensitive components like
12 threads in a package like this.

13 But the advantage of the concept you're looking at
14 here is that although there are welds in the load path, they
15 can be heat treated. They can be stress-relieved before you
16 load the waste in the package. This is about the maximum
17 size that we think we could get into the 17-inch borehole
18 with the 13-3/8 guidance casing. So it's a roughly 11-inch
19 OD, is what you have to work with.

20 And this version here is a little bit different in
21 subtle ways. First of all, it's the slim version. This is
22 the one that we would propose for the cesium/strontium
23 capsules, which look like this. They're about a half meter
24 long, they weigh about 8 kilograms, and they're about--sorry
25 about the units here--they're about 2.3 inches in outer

1 diameter. One thing when you start mixing up science with
2 drilling, the units get completely out of control.

3 This one has an internal flush concept, so you
4 could take waste forms that were already canistered, and you
5 could slide that canister into this overpack. That's the
6 idea here. And they could be constructed in any length. You
7 could do 2s, 4s, 8s, what have you. We regard 5 meters to be
8 a practical limit, because if you go much longer than that on
9 the packaging, then you're talking about a huge shielded
10 transport cask.

11 And the other thing to say about this is that we
12 could also bundle these. And the DOE-EM, Environmental
13 Management, has a program, which they call their Universal
14 Canister program, that is looking at what is the next step in
15 packaging the cesium/strontium capsules and other waste
16 forms. And we're involved with that, and we're cooperating
17 with them.

18 And one other thing about these, for the study to
19 date we've regarded the package from here to here to be the
20 same for wireline and for drill string. So we're not letting
21 that degree of freedom enter into our comparative analysis
22 right now. So they would both have threads on the ends.
23 They'd have some sort of API-type thread. But for the
24 wireline, what we'd do is we'd have a sub or an insert that
25 would thread into the top. It'll have a wireline latch on

1 it, protected by a skirt, and at the bottom we could put an
2 impact limiter. And this is really important, because if you
3 have the right impact limiter, it may very well be that you
4 can never get a package to breach if you drop it. So we'll
5 see more of that.

6 So I've described the two methods of emplacement
7 and shown you what sort of waste packages would be used. Now
8 we've set about to make a recommendation as to which method
9 of emplacement should be used for the Deep Borehole Field
10 Test, and that recommendation's got to be based on how we
11 view the performance of an actual disposal system.

12 And first I point out that the DBFT has zero
13 radiological risk. So in the risk discussion that follows,
14 we're really talking about the disposal system that will, of
15 course, trickle down to the DBFT selections. So that's what
16 I'm saying here. We're looking for features of the two
17 different methods that discriminate and we don't get hung up
18 and spend time on features that don't discriminate at this
19 point in the conceptual design process.

20 And then we've thought about what sort of off-
21 normal events or accidents could occur, and we identified a
22 few that found their way into our risk study. If we drop a
23 single canister, there may be zero consequence. We could
24 also drop a pipe string plus a waste package string, and
25 there's another one in here where we just drop the waste

1 package strong. Now we're talking about dropping assemblies
2 that weigh something like 150,000 pounds for a string of
3 packages; and then if you add 138 stands of pipe to that, it
4 goes up to about 450,000. So there's really a lot of
5 potential energy that has to be dealt with there when you
6 look at the potential for drops.

7 And then if we emplace a string of waste packages
8 with pipe, when we pull out we have 138 more opportunities to
9 drop the pipe string onto the packages. And then there's
10 this other problem of potentially getting stuck in the hole,
11 and we've treated that a little bit differently for wireline
12 versus drill string operations. But it's in the model that
13 we have for risk, and it actually is important in certain
14 places.

15 We didn't look at external hazards, feeling that
16 for this point in the conceptual design process that they
17 would not be discriminating.

18 So, given this, what is the safest emplacement
19 method given the possible range of accidents and off-normal
20 events? So we embarked on this cost-risk study. And this
21 slide attempts to put a boundary around that study. First of
22 all, if we're making a recommendation at this point, we're
23 going to get much more input to the DBFT engineering work
24 package before we get as far as a final decision on this.

25 We're making some assumptions here. I should first

1 point out an assumption that's not on the list, and that is
2 that we're not looking at the post-closure performance of the
3 system. We're looking at what evolves from the time that the
4 shipping cask is parked on top of the wellhead until all of
5 the packages are emplaced and the borehole is sealed. So
6 we're really looking at just the emplacement operation.

7 Now, we might have taken on a conceptualization of
8 the whole field of boreholes for disposal of some waste
9 stream that required five, ten, twenty boreholes. But,
10 instead, we said that, really, we're going to learn so much
11 from the first that what we need to focus on here is the
12 prototype borehole, so a single borehole with 400 packages in
13 stacks of 40, separated by cement plugs, which would help
14 bear the load of the packages.

15 And they would be delivered to the site at an
16 average of one per day. That's because you have a certain
17 turnaround rate on the system that delivers the packages to
18 the remote site, and that turnaround rate is on the order of
19 three days, which we learned from WCS, Waste Control
20 Specialists, in Texas. They have a similar operation.

21 Occupational hazards. Well, these are the things
22 that happened mainly on the drill rig, so these are the
23 falls, drops, equipment failures, things like that, things
24 that can hurt people. They are important. The hazards are
25 fairly low. The drilling industry, at least the high-dollar

1 drilling industry, has improved safety a lot in the last 20
2 years; and we don't think that they discriminate those
3 hazards between the two options that we're evaluating. And
4 that's based on oil field experience.

5 Now, worker radiological exposures are also
6 important. It's very important that we not dose our workers
7 inordinately, but we think that those exposures would be low
8 and also do not discriminate the emplacement options. And
9 that's based on industry experience with nuclear material
10 handling. And that's the benefit of having a contractor to
11 support you like AREVA, where they have vast experience in
12 handling spent fuel and other types of nuclear materials.

13 And, finally, we're assuming that we would apply a
14 functional safety design approach, which is jargon for a
15 system of sensors, cameras, and actuators that is integrated
16 with programmable logic and really backstops human error. So
17 you can really improve the reliability of your system if you
18 can get people more or less out of that loop, at least the
19 loop that leads directly to accidents. And these subsystems
20 are used extensively in your car and people movers, you know,
21 any cable-driven system that you might encounter at an
22 airport. Anyway, they're fairly common. So it's not a
23 stretch for us to invoke them here.

24 So the first job in the cost-risk study was to
25 develop an event tree for what could happen. And what we

1 have here are four major types of off-normal events. We've
2 got dropping a string during assembly--this is the drill
3 string method here--dropping the whole thing during the trip
4 in; we could get stuck during the trip in; and we can drop
5 just the pipe during the trip out. So each of those is
6 quantified by a fault tree, which I'll talk about shortly.
7 So this is fairly standard methodology here.

8 Then we get down to the branches, and there are a
9 couple of events here which are conditional on getting stuck.
10 And they required expert judgment from our subject matter
11 experts to try to get our arms around what's the probability
12 of different kinds of resolutions once you get stuck.

13 And all of these lead to a set of outcomes over
14 here, which we costed. So, in principle, you could take this
15 tree; once you had all the probabilities, you could calculate
16 it out and multiply on the right-hand side to get
17 probability-weighted cost and then sum that to a common
18 numeraire. You could do that. We planned to do that. We
19 don't really need to, because once you see the risks, you'll
20 see the basis for our recommendation.

21 And we have a similar tree for wireline
22 emplacement. This one's just a little bit more complex in
23 the middle, because it turns out that getting stuck is a
24 little trickier with the wireline. You don't have quite the
25 feel or the power that you do with the drill string. And,

1 furthermore, the drill string is already connected in the
2 best way possible for getting unstuck; whereas, with the
3 wireline, once you're well and truly stuck, you need to
4 disengage the wireline and bring in a drill rig. So that's
5 reflected in the additional complexity in that part of the
6 tree.

7 So these represent fault trees. They actually are
8 fault trees, and I'll talk a little bit about them. But
9 we've populated fault trees for each of these major off-
10 normal events, and the top event then is calculated from
11 these basic events below. So this slide just gives you a
12 feeling for the full scope of the risk model.

13 And this slide is somewhat tutorial, so I won't
14 really get into it. But I will say that we used a program
15 called Sapphire, which is sponsored by the NRC, Nuclear
16 Regulatory Commission, which accounts for the peculiar
17 graphic character of these plots. What you have here are a
18 set of AND & OR gates. And when you have events stacked like
19 this with an "and" sign, it means that they both have to
20 occur and their probabilities multiply, for example.

21 And the question then really is, once you've come
22 up with--you characterize all the basic events, all the
23 things that can really go wrong. What then do you assign as
24 a probability? And what we did was we took a fairly simple
25 approach where we identified it as either one of two kinds of

1 human error or an active equipment or passive equipment error
2 and assigned these order of magnitude probabilities that you
3 see. This is sort of approximate. But the only reason for
4 drilling down further on this would be if you had some close
5 call, if you had some matter that was emerging from your
6 model that required more resolution.

7 So some of these events are actually failures of
8 the safety system, that functional safety system that I
9 talked about. So everywhere in those fault trees human error
10 is backed up with some sort of engineered measure.

11 And we constructed all of that and then took it to
12 a panel of subject matter experts. There are some people
13 from within Sandia and also from outside of Sandia here, and
14 their purpose was--their instruction was to review and update
15 the preliminary input that we had developed on engineering
16 concepts, on the hazard analysis, and on the cost.

17 So this slide is sort of a top-level summary of the
18 risk insights that we gained from the study, and it begins
19 with the overall probability of an incident-free emplacement
20 of 40 waste packages. So for wireline it's a little lower
21 than for drill string. And that's really because with
22 wireline there are these--first off, it's easier to get stuck
23 with one package. But, secondly, it's possible in wireline,
24 when you're lowering a heavy package, that it could hang up
25 somehow momentarily and then put a dynamic load on the

1 wireline; and ultimately that will be the thing that breaks
2 your wireline. So that's reflected in these probabilities.

3 But, importantly here--this is really important--
4 the probability of a radiation release is much lower, about
5 55 times lower, for wireline emplacement than for drill
6 string. So on that alone, I could recommend that we pursue
7 wireline emplacement.

8 And there are some other insights that fall out
9 here, the probability of a failure that does not cause a
10 radiation release but terminates disposal operations. So in
11 the costing of this, we have assumed that if you get anything
12 stuck in the hole, that you would decline to put any more--
13 try to emplace any more waste in that hole. You're going to
14 move on. So that comes in here. And we see that it's a
15 little higher for wireline, and that's basically because
16 there is a higher chance of getting stuck.

17 Then we have this one, which is a probability of a
18 failure that leads to extra costs and delays but does not
19 terminate disposal operations. So that's essentially zero
20 for the drill string. So there's an interesting, sort of,
21 risk-cost trade-off here.

22 And, finally, we look at the nominal cost, the cost
23 of normal operations, about 40 million for drill string--
24 that's 400 waste packages--and about 22 million for wireline.
25 And then the expected cost, which brings in the probability

1 weighted costs of all the outcomes, is very similar. What
2 does that mean? It's similar because the likelihood of an
3 off-normal event is low.

4 So those are the insights. How can we use those
5 going forward? One of the things we can do, we can use that
6 model to actually design the Deep Borehole Field Test
7 demonstration. Now, do we need all the bells and whistles of
8 a disposal system in the demonstration? Maybe not. But if
9 we're going to eliminate something on cost or schedule or
10 because it's an engineering task that's well understood, then
11 we need to know what we're doing to our risk model, so we're
12 prepared to do that. Our report has an example.

13 And, lo and behold, there are a few remaining
14 conceptual design questions. They're probably far more than
15 I listed on this slide, but I wanted to go through a couple
16 of them just to give you an idea of where we are in the
17 process. AREVA is on board and coming up to speed. Working
18 with them, we're going to deal with some of these. These are
19 the, sort of, near-term ones that I consider to be of
20 importance to the field test itself. So we need to work on
21 concepts for the disposal interval completion.

22 So this might include things like just exactly what
23 perforation scheme we're going to use in the casing down
24 there. That was brought up a little earlier. And the
25 primary reason given for having perforations is to control

1 fluid that would be expelled from the disposal zone during
2 heating by the waste. And the goal there, of course, is to
3 keep that fluid from developing the pressure that could drive
4 past your seals and/or potentially damage your seals. So we
5 understand that. But at the same time, the perforations
6 affect the behavior of a package if you drop it in the hole.
7 So it's coming down, it's viscously damped until it gets to
8 that zone, and now it has less resistance.

9 So we need to understand the relationship between
10 the geometry of the package in the casing, the number of
11 perforations, and the viscosity of the fluid, look at
12 eccentric arrangement of the package in the casing, things of
13 that nature, so we could really make a definitive statement
14 about the potential for package breach if you drop one.

15 ZOBACK: Ernie, just a time check. You guys have been
16 speaking now an hour and 12 minutes, so we want to leave time
17 for questions.

18 HARDIN: No problem. Okay, yeah. I was working to a
19 quarter of 12:00.

20 ZOBACK: That's including questions.

21 HARDIN: Oh, that's the limit for bumping up against the
22 stop, so, okay, very good.

23 ZOBACK: No, that was to allow questions as well.

24 HARDIN: Okay, well, I won't go through these in gory
25 detail. Some of these have already--have been tasked to

1 AREVA to think about, and some of these Sandia will work on
2 in the next year. So hopefully the next time I see you we
3 can have more new information to share about what we've
4 learned on sinking velocity and other topics.

5 In addition, there are some more global topics that
6 will need to be addressed. If we go to a complex set of
7 equipment in a shielded basement, we're going to have to
8 figure out how to fix it, because the conventional means of
9 repair are simply not going to work in a radiological
10 environment. That gives you an idea of the kinds of
11 challenges that are there.

12 And there might be a few things we can do to
13 prevent packages from getting stuck, and we'll look at those
14 also. And ultimately the drop at the surface where there is
15 no fluid to dampen the dynamics could be the limiting drop
16 for us.

17 Finally, the seals technology R&D program, this is
18 a reference depiction of the seal system. It also includes
19 API-type plugging that would be done near the surface. I
20 won't get into it in too much detail. We've already talked
21 about the fact that we're following up on different
22 materials, so bentonite swelling clays, other clays,
23 different kinds of cement.

24 And the work on those materials has been going on
25 for almost a generation in the field, but we're trying to

1 evaluate some of the materials we'd like to use against the
2 environment, which is chloride brine and elevated
3 temperature, plus we have to emplace these materials at
4 depth, which, for most of them, means we have to pump them
5 down a couple of miles, and that requires a retarder. And so
6 all of these things might affect the properties and the
7 longevity of cement.

8 I should point out that some of the programs, for
9 example, the Japanese program, is planning to use cement and
10 rely on its integrity for many thousands of years. So I
11 think we might be able to do something similar.

12 And this, of course, summarizes those materials and
13 also mentions that we are supporting work by Olympic Research
14 on their fused plug idea and that University of Sheffield is
15 working on rock melting, which would be done electrically.
16 And we can talk about that more later, I guess, when
17 Professor Gibb is up here. The cartoon just decorates this
18 slide, but it's one of SKB's very early demonstrations of how
19 their borehole sealing apparatus would work.

20 And so these are studies underway. And this slide
21 also is more or less exactly consistent with the one that Tim
22 Gunter showed you earlier. So we are supporting projects at
23 RESPEC, Olympic Research, at MIT in using millimeter wave
24 technology to melt rock, and also some advanced work on
25 selection of cement for grouting and sealing.

1 And then we have our partner labs and subcontracts.
2 The University of Sheffield contract has just been let. But
3 this one is a maybe. We are involved with the KAERI in their
4 URL, Underground Research Lab, on a set of experiments that
5 may include sealing. We're talking about that. And then Los
6 Alamos is involved in the laboratory work on smectites. And
7 then we are starting to participate in the SubTER program,
8 which is a priority for the DOE.

9 So that is it. Most of what I've presented here
10 you'll find in this 2015 report right here. Thank you.

11 ZOBACK: Okay, thank you very much. A lot of ground
12 has been covered, and I know we're going to have lots of
13 questions. This is a chance for everyone to question DOE
14 directly on their plans, so I'm going to start with Board
15 members. Jerry.

16 FRANKEL: Jerry Frankel, Board. So I'm going to come
17 back to the question I asked Tim Gunter. You know, all of
18 your cutaway slides say that the field test, one of the
19 objectives is to evaluate and test seals. But it seems like
20 all of your seal work is laboratory-based. So is there any
21 testing of seals going to be done in the field test?

22 HARDIN: My answer is maybe later, maybe later. We're
23 talking about a heater test, and that's part of the scope of
24 the Characterization Borehole. It would be at some point
25 later in that program to do a heater test. And the heater

1 test may very well have a seals-type component to it. We'll
2 see. Don't know yet.

3 FRANKEL: But you're using this field test to come up
4 with the assessment of your safety case, your post-closure
5 safety case. I mean, is there going to be some--I mean, it
6 seems to me you would need to use this opportunity to develop
7 the safety case for the long-term survival of seals for these
8 large boreholes.

9 HARDIN: Right. You know, it's a tricky problem,
10 because the behavior of the sealing materials that probably
11 concerns some of our folks the most is longevity.

12 FRANKEL: Right.

13 HARDIN: So that type of experiment needs to be started
14 in the laboratory.

15 SASSANI: I'll just add a little bit to it. There's two
16 aspects of that. One is, you know, the aspects that we're
17 looking at directly, if we can't demonstrate that we can do
18 this, well, you don't have to do any sealing work, right? So
19 that's why it's a little bit on the back end of the whole R&D
20 program. But we do have--and was the KAERI work up here? We
21 do have a field borehole that's going to be going on in South
22 Korea that's not at 5 kilometers depth, but it will be a
23 fairly deep borehole starting from their Underground Research
24 Lab. And we're looking at that to plan maybe some in situ
25 seal testing.

1 ZOBACK: Okay, Sue.

2 BRANTLEY: Sue Brantley, Board. Am I working now? He
3 tells me I'm working now. I didn't have a microphone this
4 morning. I wonder why. Thanks for--

5 SASSANI: I had nothing to do with it.

6 BRANTLEY: Thanks for trying to answer my questions from
7 this morning. That was great.

8 I just wanted to talk about the straightness of
9 these boreholes. In your images and movies they're all
10 perfectly straight. Can anybody tell me whether these
11 boreholes that go down 5 kilometers in crystalline rock are
12 perfectly straight?

13 SASSANI: There are people who can speak to that better
14 than I, but given--

15 BRANTLEY: And why don't we let them.

16 SASSANI: I was just going to say, given the scale you
17 were seeing them at, that's probably how straight they are.
18 But I don't know if Steve Pye would like to talk about--

19 BRANTLEY: Well, I think Mary Lou wants that to be--

20 ZOBACK: We're going to touch on that.

21 SASSANI: Okay. There are directional drilling
22 technologies that can keep you very straight, for the
23 borehole anyway.

24 BRANTLEY: Okay, that's to scale, but then as you send
25 something down there, that's where we get worried about

1 something getting stuck. So I think it's, you know, a little
2 bit confusing.

3 The other thing I wanted to ask about, I think
4 you've said--did I get this correct?--that you're not going
5 to be cementing in the casing so that you could pull it back
6 up if you had to. Did I get that right?

7 HARDIN: Part of it, yes. Hardin, Sandia. So that
8 borehole would be lined--we're talking about the Field Test
9 Borehole here, so the large-diameter hole would be lined down
10 to a station just above the crystalline basement contact. It
11 would be lined with steel and cemented. And then everything
12 else that went in the hole would--the guidance casing and the
13 casing that was hung in the disposal zone would be
14 uncemented.

15 BRANTLEY: I guess I'm getting confused in the details.
16 I mean, you know, as I understand that, with boreholes, say,
17 in Pennsylvania, which are much shallower, the casing is
18 what--I'm sorry--they like to think that the casing keeping
19 the movement horizontally from happening, but the cement
20 keeps the vertical from happening. And when the cement
21 problems happen, we get gases coming up along our boreholes.

22 Are you planning to have cement so that they
23 wouldn't have any gas movement up along your borehole?

24 HARDIN: Okay, Hardin, Sandia again. Frankly, I don't
25 think we're going to need it. The point of the casing plan

1 is to isolate the overburden interval and then leave the
2 basement accessible. And that's particularly true in the
3 Characterization Borehole, which will essentially be an open
4 hole completion in the basement interval.

5 So, no, I don't think that gas movement is going to
6 be important in the basement. That remains to be confirmed,
7 let's say. That's one other reason for drilling a
8 characterization hole.

9 BRANTLEY: Test it, test it.

10 HARDIN: Yes, it would be tested.

11 ZOBACK: Rod.

12 EWING: Rod Ewing, Board. Ernie, I'd like to go back to
13 the fault tree analysis. Certainly it gives one a lot of
14 insight into the possible types of accidents, so it's very
15 useful, and I appreciated your presentation.

16 But I'm always surprised at the end of the fault
17 tree analysis how low the probabilities are of accidents,
18 right? For the drill string, 99 percent of the time you'll
19 get 400 waste packages down the hole without--it's called
20 incident-free. So that's fine, that could be, but can you
21 draw on actual experience to test your analysis?

22 I mean, in the oil patch there are lots of
23 accidents on drill rigs, lots of different types of
24 accidents. Certainly there are fault tree analyses. They go
25 with those. So have you looked at what the actual experience

1 is on drill rigs?

2 HARDIN: We're doing that now.

3 EWING: Okay.

4 HARDIN: We have an effort to pick a few databases and
5 see whether they help us. The tendency when you do that is
6 you're going to bring in more detail in the conceptualization
7 of the system that you're describing, so there's a phenomenon
8 that occurs called disaggregation. So you break a process
9 down into subprocesses and so forth, because you need the
10 subprocess level conceptualization to match the industry
11 data. Disaggregation comes--a distortion in the overall top
12 in that probability. So it--

13 EWING: Yeah, I understand that, but a more fundamental
14 question would be to look back at the fault tree analysis
15 before the accident and analyze the approach just to get an
16 idea of whether generally with the fault tree analysis you
17 get a high or low number. I don't know the answer, but it
18 seems like accidents occur more often than our analyses would
19 indicate.

20 HARDIN: You could turn that around and say that,
21 really, some of these drops that we're talking about here,
22 which would be almost catastrophic, are quite rare in the oil
23 business. I mean, they don't drop pipe streams very often.
24 And you could back out of that--and we have--in the scoping
25 manner, what the event-wise probability of it really is. And

1 that's how we can justify something like 10^{-5} or 10^{-6} .

2 EWING: Okay, thank you.

3 HARDIN: It's a point well-taken.

4 ZOBACK: Jean.

5 BAHR: Jean Bahr, Board. Another question related to
6 the fault tree analysis. One of your categories was
7 probability of a failure that does not cause radiation
8 release but terminates disposal operations. And my question
9 is, over what time scales is that not a radioactive release?
10 Does that mean that it doesn't cause an immediate radioactive
11 release to the surface; but if it terminates operations and
12 hence precludes good sealing, perhaps could it lead to a
13 long-term release or something that would lead to a long-term
14 release not in that category?

15 HARDIN: Okay, so we are on our second or third choice
16 of words for that statement. And by "terminate" what we
17 meant was that you have just lost the use of that borehole
18 for any further disposal activity, but you can still complete
19 it according to plan.

20 BAHR: Okay, thanks.

21 HARDIN: There are some outcomes on those trees where
22 you really lose it, but we think we've found a way to avoid
23 most of them.

24 ZOBACK: Paul.

25 TURINSKY: Paul Turinsky, Board. Just a point of

1 clarification. What exactly is going into the test hole?

2 HARDIN: One or more test packages. I think that's the
3 answer; right? We don't know exactly how many test packages
4 will be built for the demonstration yet. It's going to be
5 some number probably greater than three and less than ten.
6 We'll build enough for destructive testing, and hopefully
7 we'll be able to drop a few of them down the hole and see
8 what happens. Does that answer?

9 TURINSKY: Okay, yeah, it does. And seals--are seals
10 going to be placed to see the process?

11 HARDIN: No, there are no current plans to run a seals
12 emplacement-type experiment in either of the boreholes,
13 currently.

14 ZOBACK: Any other Board questions? Efi.

15 FOUFOULA: Efi Foufoula, Board. I'm sure you're
16 familiar with the concept of probable maximum flood that is
17 used for the design nuclear power plants and so forth. And
18 this is based on a similar kind of probabilistic theory and
19 so forth and some concepts that cascade of probability of
20 failure. And the end products are probabilities then to the
21 minus 7 of failure and so forth.

22 But probably you are also aware that in the last
23 two years the National Weather Service has updated this
24 probabilistic maximum flood, probabilities of failure,
25 because events have happened that they were not anticipated

1 before or, you know, we have seen extreme events, much more
2 than we knew 60 years ago and so forth. So in every
3 probabilistic analysis of that sort, there are the unknown
4 unknowns and the known unknowns and so forth.

5 So talking about such low probabilities, if there
6 is one thing that we would say is unanticipated and not
7 accounted for but would just break the whole concept, what
8 would that be?

9 HARDIN: I haven't found it. But I want to say that
10 this is not the last word, the safety of this system. If and
11 when we ever get to go ahead to do a disposal system, we have
12 a site and so forth, there would be a much more extensive
13 probabilistic nuclear safety analysis done on the order of
14 what was done for Yucca Mountain, maybe not in all of that
15 complexity, but--yeah, the requirements are there, and
16 they're much more rigorous than what I've showed you today.

17 ZOBACK: Any other questions from the Board? I have one
18 myself--Mary Lou Zoback, Board--and that is, you didn't
19 discuss things such as what if a weld was faulty and when you
20 went to join two packages you literally sheared the top off
21 the weld. How does that get captured? You know, no one was
22 going to substitute organic kitty litter in the waste
23 packages going to WIPP either, but it happened. And every
24 accident in a nuclear power reactor has been a human error.

25 So it seems to me there's many more sources of

1 errors than you've captured.

2 HARDIN: Right. So that's a good point. And the
3 methods used to inspect and verify the package fabrication
4 are really important. And that's going to be part of the
5 scope of the engineering services that are provided to the
6 Deep Borehole Field Test. I mean, I look at it a little bit
7 differently. I don't want the package to crush in the hole
8 for any reason at all during the test. How do we make sure
9 that doesn't happen?

10 EWING: Can I ask a follow-up?

11 ZOBACK: Rod.

12 EWING: Just on this issue of inspection and reducing
13 the probability or the possibility of accidents, so with the
14 cesium and strontium samples, they're not pure cesium
15 chloride, strontium fluoride. There's transportation
16 effects; the chemistry is changing; if you read the reports,
17 some of them slide up and down in the canisters; there's been
18 volume expansion.

19 So will you inspect or in your strategy will you be
20 checking carefully the material you put down the hole?

21 HARDIN: Don't know. I would assume that some necessary
22 level of inspection would occur. We haven't addressed that
23 in our study. That's kind of a vacant answer, but that's
24 exactly where we are with it.

25 ZOBACK: We appreciate honesty.

1 I'm going to pause right now, because we have run
2 into our public comment period, and I know panelists have
3 indicated there's a number of questions there. But we also
4 always invite members of the general public that have signed
5 up. So my question is: Has anyone signed up on the sheet?

6 Since we don't know that yet, I can't remember--I
7 think you were--no, behind you gentlemen, right, first to
8 come up and, again, identify yourself. Thanks.

9 SRIDHAR: Thank you. Narasi Sridhar, DNV GL. In your
10 fault tree or risk analysis, you mainly focused on what I
11 would call instantaneous failures, things drop, things break,
12 and so on. But you have 400 waste packages. And assuming
13 one a day if everything goes well, you have more than a year,
14 but not everything will go well. So you'll have a time-based
15 risk where these things are hanging by threads or whatever.

16 So have you considered time-based events where
17 things are degrading due to exposure to whatever, you know,
18 downhole environment?

19 HARDIN: Hardin, Sandia. I think we have considered
20 that. We have a specification for the corrosion lifetime of
21 the packaging simply because we have to accommodate some
22 unforeseen delay. And we've also talked about what happens
23 when the string is hanging for 40 days from the surface. Are
24 there some sort of unforeseen conditions that might result?
25 Thermal is one of them. So what happens if two systems break

1 down, your mud circulation goes, and something happens to
2 your chain of supply, and now you have a thermal problem in
3 the hole? Yeah, we've considered that, but we haven't dealt
4 with it explicitly.

5 SRIDHAR: May I ask a follow-up question?

6 ZOBACK: Quickly.

7 SRIDHAR: So in the fault tree analysis one of the major
8 issues is that the basic events don't interact, cannot
9 interact. They are independent. But, really, in these kinds
10 of time-based events, you need to consider interaction of
11 some of the basic events. Have you thought about that a
12 little bit, for instance, where you have a creep of something
13 hanging and then some other weld problem occurs, for example,
14 things like that?

15 HARDIN: Since we're dealing with instantaneous events,
16 I don't think there's much overlap in that way. So that
17 would be a topic for a future analysis.

18 ZOBACK: Thank you.

19 We have no one signed up for public comment, so I
20 invite anybody that has a question to come up to the
21 microphone, and we'll try to get to as many questions as
22 possible before our noon break.

23 Yes, go ahead.

24 GARWIN: Richard Garwin, IBM Fellow Emeritus, Panel 7. I
25 certainly welcome evaluation rather than confirming. Very

1 difficult to maintain that as the program goes on.

2 In particular, what is known about hydrogen bubble
3 generation and creep to the surface from the test wells?
4 Because you've got a casing which will corrode, and you have
5 a path all the way to the surface, you block it
6 macroscopically with bentonite or whatever, but there are
7 still rock fractures close to the borehole. So what is known
8 and what is the test for such things in the program?

9 SASSANI: That's a good question, and it's one of our
10 active areas of discussion and research. But it's very
11 similar to what's been done in the European FORGE program
12 looking at the fate of repository gases in the EBS system,
13 where they were concerned there with generation of hydrogen
14 and actually disruption of their engineered barriers, things
15 like blocks, clay bentonite barriers around the packages.

16 And, in fact, they have a little bit--it's a little
17 different, because we have a lot greater depth, so we can
18 have higher pressure. And we have materials that are
19 corroding that are also in reduced conditions or reducing
20 conditions in most saturated repository systems, so you're
21 getting the same kinds of reactions going on. Hydrogen under
22 these systems, we expect that it will migrate in solution.
23 It diffuses fairly readily.

24 But in terms of overpressuring these systems, I
25 won't say it's likely impossible, but you could--if you

1 generate hydrogen gas continuously from a large enough mass
2 of metal, you might generate separate gas. You'd become--
3 basically, your hydrogen partial pressure equals your total
4 pressure. So in those systems in our case, our bentonite
5 buffer, the permeabilities of it I don't think will approach
6 the low permeability of the intact crystalline basement rock.
7 So that's why we expect that to be the pathway.

8 And then there's the disturbed rock zone that's in
9 the annulus, which, depending on how invasive the seals are,
10 that may or may not be as well sealed. So we would figure on
11 having at least orders of magnitude permeability deltas in
12 there, one, two, three orders of magnitude, and still have
13 substantial performance from the system. But I think it will
14 actually provide also a fairly direct pathway for any gas to
15 move out.

16 I think it was the Kola borehole where hydrogen was
17 observed to be escaping. It wasn't doing anything
18 substantially bad. And we're looking right now at kind of
19 the oil field industry and the experience from oil wells,
20 which have been out there for decades with casing in them
21 that should be undergoing degradation reactions and
22 generating hydrogen, to see if, you know, do you generate
23 migration and seepage of hydrogen out of the system, or does
24 it do something that's substantially different than that.

25 ZOBACK: Okay, next question. And, again, come on up;

1 and if you line up, then we can get questions as quick as
2 possible.

3 PUSCH: Yeah, I have a question to the Sandia
4 representative concerning the--

5 ZOBACK: Identify yourself again.

6 PUSCH: Is that louder?

7 ZOBACK: No. Identify yourself.

8 PUSCH: Oh, my name is Pusch. I am a professor from
9 Sweden. I have been working with these things for 40 years,
10 I think almost a hundred years. I'll come back to that later
11 in the afternoon, and that will touch on a number of
12 questions that have come up here lately.

13 The question I have concerning the investigations
14 into boreholes, when we are down there at the bottom of the
15 hole, we have 150 centigrade. That means that the creep
16 property is changing. Have you considered the creep and
17 creep-related risk of failure of the rock?

18 SASSANI: I'm not sure we've looked so much at creep of
19 the rock at this point. At 150 degrees, I'm not too
20 concerned about the rock creep. The materials creep may be
21 more substantial, but we're--you know, we would be emplacing
22 over less than about a year and then sealing the borehole and
23 going away. And so at that point, particularly with the way
24 we do our safety assessments and not taking any post-closure
25 credit for the canisters--

1 PUSCH: No, creep is not in the crystal matrix. It is
2 in the fissures that have chloride in them and things like
3 that. You get movements, and this can generate failure of
4 the hole.

5 SASSANI: Yes.

6 PUSCH: I have two other questions.

7 ZOBACK: Make them quick, because it's lunchtime.

8 PUSCH: Very quick. And that was concerning the concept
9 of having the respective container units connected to each
10 other. It's a series; is that correct? It's a series of
11 connected containers?

12 SASSANI: Yes.

13 PUSCH: And they make up a set of maybe three, four,
14 five containers?

15 SASSANI: Or more.

16 PUSCH: And when you put one down there and you come
17 with the next, how do you connect these two?

18 HARDIN: So the packages are stacked, not threaded
19 together in the hole. So they are simply emplaced one on
20 another without connecting the threads.

21 PUSCH: There can be some slight displacement. You
22 cannot guarantee that they have complete connectivity between
23 each individual package. That's all.

24 HARDIN: That is correct, yeah. There is no effort in
25 this concept to center.

1 PUSCH: I don't think that matters very much, but it's
2 important with respect to the quality assurance. You need to
3 know where each individual canister--where they are. And
4 that would speak in favor of the drilling technique. Use the
5 drilling logs to put them down, to keep them there for a few
6 minutes to make sure that they stick there, and then go up
7 with the drilling strings again and bring down the next set.
8 I think that is an important thing, quality assurance. You
9 know where the things are.

10 ZOBACK: Okay, thank you.

11 A quick question? Both of you have been waiting,
12 and I'd like to let you get in. Go ahead.

13 BRACKE: Guido Bracke from GRS Germany. I think it's a
14 quick question. Is the recovery or retrieval of the test
15 packages possible? If yes, how it is done; if no, could it
16 be done?

17 HARDIN: Hardin from Sandia. So retrieval is always the
18 question that comes up with borehole disposal. For the Deep
19 Borehole Field Test we will retrieve--we plan to retrieve all
20 the packages. And for a disposal operation, I would say
21 that's not really determined. We know that we'll be able to
22 retrieve them for a period of time, for some months, for
23 years; we could retrieve them. And then after that, after
24 the borehole is sealed, we don't know at this point whether
25 that could be done practically. But we also don't know if

1 it's required. So in the U.S. regulatory context, it may not
2 be required even if it could be done.

3 GRUNDFELT: Grundfelt, Sweden. A very quick question,
4 pick up from where Rod Ewing was. He said it was a very low
5 probability for radioactive release. You had about .121
6 percent probability per 400 canisters. That means about 1 to
7 10 percent per borehole. That sounds pretty high
8 to me.

9 HARDIN: I think you might have the numbers wrong. So
10 the results I showed in that summary table were--

11 GRUNDFELT: 10^{-4} to 7 times 10^{-3} per were on the
12 canisters.

13 HARDIN: For the entire operation.

14 GRUNDFELT: For the entire. Okay. I thought it was per
15 400 canisters.

16 ZOBACK: Okay. We need to be organized for lunch. So
17 I'm going to ask that everyone exit through the back door,
18 pick up their lunch, and come in through this middle door and
19 get your seat as quickly as possible, so we have Fergus
20 Gibb's speech. Thank you. We only ended a couple minutes
21 late, but I wanted to let the four visitors speak.

22 (Whereupon, a lunch recess was taken and the lunch
23 presentation by Fergus GF Gibb was transcribed by another
24 firm.)

25

UNITED STATES NUCLEAR WASTE TECHNICAL REVIEW BOARD
INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL WORKSHOP ON DEEP BOREHOLE
DISPOSAL OF RADIOACTIVE WASTE

LUNCHTIME PRESENTATION:

INTERNATIONAL PERSPECTIVE ON DEEP BOREHOLE
DISPOSAL

FERGUS GIBB, UNIVERSITY OF SHEFFIELD, UNITED
KINGDOM

TUESDAY, OCTOBER

20, 2015

Embassy Suites
1250 22nd Street, N.W.
Washington, DC 20037

Reported by: Christine Allen,
Capital Reporting Company

1 P R O C E E D I N G S

2 12:14 p.m.

3 ZOBACK: Okay. It looks like
4 everybody followed the directions on the doors and
5 got their lunches. I'd like to ask you to take a
6 seat if you could. We would like to get started.

7 We are very fortunate to have a very
8 distinguished lunchtime speaker today. For our
9 lunchtime talk, we're going to have Fergus Gibb
10 from University of Sheffield in the U.K. give the talk.

11 Fergus got his Ph.D. in geology from St.
12 Andrews and went on to lecture in geology at
13 various universities. He ended up at Sheffield in
14 1973, became a senior lecturer there.

15 Interestingly, after being in geology
16 for many years, in 2001, he actually switched over
17 to material science and engineering, and has been
18 working in that group since. He now has a Chair
19 in the Material Science Department that is
20 partially funded by the Nuclear Decommissioning
21 Authority in the U.K. He is working in the
22 immobilization lab there in Material Science.

1 As I mentioned in my introductory
2 remarks, I really credit Fergus more than any
3 other scientist for really revitalizing providing
4 scientific credibility to the deep borehole
5 disposal idea, and today, we are very lucky to
6 hear from him on the international perspective on
7 deep borehole disposal.

8 Fergus?

9 GIBB: Thank you, Mary Lou. Well,
10 when I started working on deep borehole disposal,
11 about 25 years ago, I could never have envisioned
12 I would be standing here today, and very grateful
13 to the Board for their invitation and opportunity
14 to give this presentation.

15 I am going to give this in four parts.
16 I am going to give a brief history of deep
17 borehole disposal, followed by a few comments on
18 some of the potential benefits of boreholes. I
19 shall then look at how boreholes have featured in
20 international programs, excluding the USA, of
21 course, and then for the remainder of the time, I
22 am going to look at some important differences

1 between the various types of deep borehole
2 disposal schemes that have been put forward, and
3 the technical issues these raise, the options they
4 provide, and the challenges they present for
5 implementation.

6 As we heard earlier, the idea of putting
7 radioactive waste down holes in the ground is not
8 new. What I am going to do is just list some of
9 the key milestones that have brought us to where
10 we are now. Inevitably, this will be a rather
11 subjective list.

12 Deep borehole disposal, which is also
13 sometimes referred to as very deep holes,
14 particularly in Sweden, or very deep disposal,
15 which we used to call it in the U.K., has been
16 around since the early 1950s. It was suggested
17 both in the United States and the Soviet Union.

18 The first serious consideration of it
19 was in 1957 when the U.S. National Academy of
20 Sciences considered it as a possibility but
21 rejected it in favor of mined engineered
22 repositories largely on the grounds, as we heard

1 earlier, that the technology did not exist at that
2 time.

3 However, the idea did not die. It
4 resurfaced in a number of reports through the
5 1970s. In 1983, Woodward-Clyde produced a seminal
report

6 in which they presented a reference system for
7 deep borehole disposal. This called for a 20-inch
8 hole to a depth of 6 kilometers.

9 This report was largely speculative
10 because it was based on a projection of what would
11 be technically possible by the year 2000. But, it was
12 remarkably prescient. It has been influential in many of
13 the subsequent borehole disposal schemes, including the
14 one we heard about this morning.

15 In 1989, Juhlin and Sandstedt produced a
16 very detailed two-part report on disposal in deep
17 boreholes for SKB, the Swedish nuclear waste
18 management organization. As I said, this was in
19 two parts. The first part looked at the
20 geological situation, geological benefits of deep
21 borehole disposal, albeit in a Swedish context,
22 and the second part actually presented an

1 engineering design.

2 This report was obviously influenced by
3 SKB's work on mined repositories, and it
4 was based on a 50 centimeter diameter titanium
5 container that would take four boiling water
6 reactor assemblies or 1PWR and two boiling water
7 reactor assemblies. Obviously, it needed a very
8 large hole. In fact, it called for an 80-
9 centimeter hole.

10 Throughout the 1990s at the University
11 of Sheffield, we were investigating the geological
12 feasibility of deep borehole disposal and produced
13 a number of reports and papers like this one here.

14 Our initial focus was on what we called
15 "the high temperature version" of deep borehole
16 disposal, in which the waste packages would
17 generate sufficient heat to partially melt the
18 host-rock with subsequent cooling, re-
19 crystallization, encapsulating the waste packages
20 in the sarcophagus of solid granite, which would be
21 continuous with and virtually identical to the
22 original host-rock.

1 waste program to include deep borehole disposal.

2 Now, opponents of deep borehole disposal
3 had always argued that no one had ever drilled
4 such big deep boreholes before, and therefore,
5 they were beyond the capability of the drilling
6 industry.

7 It was a major step forward when in 2008
8 the Nuclear Decommissioning Authority in the U.K.
9 commissioned this report on the "Status of
10 Technology for Borehole Disposal," written by John
11 Beswick, who was mentioned earlier, who is an
12 international expert on deep drilling in
13 crystallized rocks.

14 He concluded that boreholes up to 50
15 centimeters in diameter could be designed and
16 implemented more or less there and then. Larger
17 boreholes, up to about 75 centimeters, could be
18 done but would require some technology
19 development, and he also advised that even larger
20 holes like a meter or larger should not be
21 considered at that time because they were outside
22 the envelope of experience.

1 Well around this time, Sandia National
2 Lab became very interested in deep borehole disposal,
3 and the appearance of this report marked a step
4 forward because it was the first real quantitative
5 performance assessment of the concept. Although
6 it was rather simplified, and used very
7 conservative assumptions, it did confirm that there was
8 an exceptional degree of safety to be gained
9 from deep borehole disposal.

10 A couple of years later, Sandia produced
11 another report giving a reference design for deep
12 borehole disposal, which was the one that Ernie and
13 David were talking about this morning, and this called
14 for a 17 inch hole, which is quite a bit smaller than
15 most other deep borehole schemes, but they were
16 putting it down to five kilometers. At that time,
17 it was kind of pushing the envelope a bit.

18 Of course, as I'm sure everybody knows,
19 in 2012, the Blue Ribbon Commission reported to
20 the Secretary of Energy. They identified deep
21 borehole disposal as a potentially promising
22 technology, which merited further research and

1 development.

2 The rest you know, last year, the
3 Department of Energy's assessment of disposal
4 options committed to a program of research on deep
5 boreholes, and called for a practical
6 demonstration of the technology. The rest of the story,
7 we know all about. We have heard it. It is going ahead.

8 Around the same time, we demonstrated
9 that deep borehole disposal would work very well
10 for very high heat generating waste, such as the MOX or
11 high-burnup spent fuels likely to arise from the next
12 generation of reactors that are going to be used in
13 newly built power stations.

14 This has a lot of advantages in that
15 particular scenario because it could eliminate the
16 need for over 100 years of pre-disposal cooling,
17 which you would require for disposal in a mined
18 repository. So, deep borehole disposal
19 is not just safer and better, it can do some
20 things that normal mined repositories
21 would struggle with.

22 The state-of-the-art is kind of summed

1 up in this report by Beswick, et al, which
2 identified some very interesting engineering issues and
3 discussed them at some length. If anyone would
4 like a copy of that, we have got some of them with us.

5 Moving on to the potential benefits of
6 boreholes, it is often argued how many benefits
7 there are potentially, and I'm not going to go
8 into these in detail because they are pretty well
9 known, particularly things like safety, which we
10 heard a little bit about this morning.

11 I'll comment just briefly on one or two
12 of the less frequently mentioned ones. Most
13 borehole disposal concepts are aimed at spent
14 fuel, unlike here in the U.S. The rest of the
15 world was looking to get rid of spent fuel. When
16 it comes to disposing of spent fuel, it is about
17 an order of magnitude more cost effective.

18 To dispose of a ton of heavy metal in a
19 borehole, it would cost less than 20 percent of
20 the cost of disposing of it in SKB's planned
21 repository. The environmental impact, of course,
22 is much smaller because not only are the surface

1 facilities for a borehole much less than a
2 mined repository, but the key thing is it is
3 transient.

4 It would take less than three years to
5 drill, fill, and seal a borehole. Once the rig is
6 moved off the site, the environmental impact is
7 effectively zero. Contrast that with a mined
8 repository, which could remain open and
9 operational for over 300 years.

10 Now dispersed disposal is an issue. Rather than
11 having one or two very large facilities, you can have
12 any number of small ones, even down to an individual
13 nuclear installation disposing of its own waste on a
14 near site given suitable geology. That, of course, could
15 reduce or maybe even eliminate some of the transportation
16 problems, which can be quite particular,
17 particularly in a large country like the U.S.

18 A small disposal program using boreholes
19 could be expanded as and when required, and a
20 large one could be terminated at any point without
21 any significant further costs. Again, contrast
22 that with a mined repository where most

1 of the investment is up front before any waste is
2 disposed of. It is effectively a "pay as you go"
3 system.

4 Fukushima reminded us all, of course, of
5 how important it is that nuclear facilities can
6 withstand the effects of a tectonic event. Seismic
7 shear waves will not disrupt the gravity-stratified
8 groundwater in the crystalline basement. Even if
9 an earthquake ruptured the canisters and damaged
10 the other barriers, the groundwater into which any
11 radionuclides might reach out is going nowhere.
12 It would not disturb the isolation, and therefore,
13 it would not threaten the overall safety of the
14 disposal.

15 Very few countries have seriously looked
16 at deep boreholes. The U.S. is now setting the
17 pace, but it is very difficult to interest
18 governments and waste management organizations in
19 a concept like deep boreholes. Of course, this is
20 largely because of the huge investments they have
21 made in time, money, and effort already in mined
22 repositories.

1 There is also a growing alarm among the
2 supporters of repositories that deep boreholes
3 could divert attention and resources from
4 repositories, could damage public confidence in
5 them, and delay their implementation even further.
6 There is a lot of resistance to getting deep
7 boreholes into anybody's plans. Nowhere is this
8 more true than in the United Kingdom.

9 Back in 2004, Nirex reviewed the deep
10 borehole disposal concept, highlighted the fact
11 that there was no practical demonstration of it
12 anywhere, and considered that the investment in
13 time, money, effort required to bring it up to the
14 technical readiness level of borehole disposal was
15 prohibitive.

16 A couple of years later when the
17 Committee on Radioactive Waste Management reported
18 to the government, they recommended for the U.K. high
19 activity waste that the best option at that time was
20 geological disposal in a mined and engineered
21 repository, but they added the rider that any decision
22 making should leave open the possibility that other

1 options such as deep borehole disposal could
2 emerge as a practical alternative.

3 Nevertheless, a couple of years later
4 when the government did announce its policy,
5 boreholes were more or less forgotten about, and
6 all they said is that the Nuclear Decommissioning
7 Authority would also keep options such as borehole
8 disposal under review.

9 In 2011, political pressure at the
10 highest level was brought to bear on the
11 implementers to accelerate the geological disposal
12 program, and in response, the NDA reviewed
13 options, and they did identify the use of deep
14 boreholes to bring the first disposal of high-
15 level waste forward from 2075 to 2040, which at
16 the time was the plan.

17 However, last year when the government
18 updated its policy, yet again boreholes fell
19 through the gaps, and the U.K. has made no change
20 to its commitment to a mined and engineered repository
21 for its high activity waste - to if and when they can
22 find a willing community and a suitable site.

1 Earlier this month, the implementers,
2 the waste management organization, kicked the
3 whole thing further down the road for another 10
4 years.

5 Sweden is the only country that has
6 seriously considered deep boreholes. In the late
7 1980s, a series of reports for SKB culminated in
8 this seminal work by Juhlin and Sandstedt that I
9 mentioned earlier, and was followed a few years later by
10 SKB's Project Alternative Systems study, in which
11 they compared their own very deep hole concept
12 with their KBS-3 mined repository concept, and a
13 couple of other repository schemes.

14 They concluded that the long term safety
15 of very deep holes was potentially as good as the
16 long term safety of a repository, but it was much
17 more difficult to demonstrate. At the end of
18 their analysis, perhaps not surprisingly, deep
19 boreholes were ranked last.

20 Ever since then, SKB's position has been
21 that it would take 30 years and a massive
22 investment to bring the technology for deep

1 borehole disposal up to the readiness level of
2 their KBS-3 mined repository, and the KBS-3 concept
3 remains their preferred option.

4 However, the Swedish government and the
5 regulators pressed them to carry on looking at
6 alternatives, and they did so, and they produced a
7 number of reports, which were not unhelpful to
8 deep boreholes, like this one by Harrison in 2000,
9 which showed that the borehole could be drilled.

10 In his report, Harrison modified the
11 original deep borehole concept slightly by
12 replacing the titanium containers with steel and
13 enlarging the disposal zone from 80 centimeters to
14 84. He basically concluded that the well could be
15 drilled with currently existing technology,
16 although it would be a bit difficult.

17 Also, reports like this one, which
18 looked at the groundwater and said even for an
19 array of 45 boreholes, which would take care of
20 the whole of the Swedish spent fuel inventory -- I
21 switched it off.

22 This concluded that the heat output from

1 the spent fuel in this array of boreholes would
2 not jeopardize the stability of the saline
3 groundwater system.

4 In Sweden, the law requires that SKB
5 consider all the possible alternatives and then
6 justify their choice of disposal concept. In
7 2010, they commissioned a report that compared the
8 KBS method again with their own very deep hole
9 disposal system, and this formed the basis for
10 their rejection of deep boreholes when they
11 applied in 2011 to the Environmental Court for
12 permission to start constructing a spent fuel
13 repository at Forsmark.

14 The application was challenged by a
15 number of organizations on various grounds, but
16 including the rejection of deep boreholes, and the
17 suggestion was made that the argument was flawed,
18 not least because they had compared the current
19 version of the KBS-3 repository concept with the
20 20 year old very deep hole concept that they had
21 commissioned earlier.

22 In 2014, under advice from the

1 Environmental Court, SKB submitted a revised and
2 reduced case against deep boreholes. I think a
3 decision is fairly imminent, and we just wait to
4 see whether or not the Environmental Court
5 accepted that.

6 Germany is the latest country to show an
7 interest in boreholes. Germany has about 10,000
8 tons of spent fuel and about 300 canisters of
9 vitrified reprocessing waste. Most of this is in
10 storage, either in fuel forms or dry storage. It
11 is awaiting disposal, but of course, three years
12 ago they abandoned their plans for a mined
13 repository in salt in Gorleben, and essentially
14 like many other countries, it now has nowhere to
15 go.

16 In 2013, the German government set up a
17 33-man commission to look into finding a final
18 disposal site for the high level waste. This
19 commission has until 2016 to select the criteria
20 it will use and then to find or at least begin the
21 search for a site.

22 Last year, a group of individuals,

1 academics, nuclear industry employees, government
2 employees, came together to form a group to
3 promote deep boreholes. They were very
4 successful. They are based at Karlsruhe Institute
5 of Technology, and they managed to persuade the
6 commission that it ought to look at alternatives
7 to mined repositories in their deliberations.

8 Last June, they organized a very
9 successful conference in Berlin, and the outcomes
10 of that conference have been fed into the
11 commission in its subsequent meeting. We just
12 have to wait and see what they made of it.

13 There are not many other countries that
14 have looked at boreholes but among those that did
15 was Russia, where they actually got as far as
16 putting forward a proposal to dispose of spent
17 boiling water reactor fuel in deep
18 boreholes at or near their nuclear power plants, and to
19 the best of my knowledge, nothing came of it.

20 In the late 1990s, representatives of
21 the Czech Republic approached us at Sheffield and
22 asked for information about deep borehole disposal

1 because they have a fairly small inventory of
2 spent fuel. Basically, they were interested but
3 they decided they could not afford to develop the
4 technology.

5 More recently, as we heard this morning,
6 South Korea is interested, and some of their
7 scientists are involved with the Sandia program
8 and have attended and participated in the
9 workshops on deep borehole disposal. Similarly,
10 China is interested and scientists from Sandia
11 have been across to China to participate in
12 discussions.

13 But basically, the list is pretty short.
14 There are not a lot of countries that have done
15 much apart from Sweden, and I think it is safe to
16 say that if someone developed successful deep
17 borehole technology, there would be a pretty good
18 market for it.

19 What I'd like to do for the rest of the
20 talk is to look at issues, options, and challenges
21 for deep boreholes. Within the generic concept,
22 there are many different versions that have been

1 put forward, and these differ considerably in
2 detail and approach. These differences are quite
3 important because they give rise to technical
4 issues and create options that really need to be
5 considered very carefully in any practical
6 borehole implementation.

7 Three of the areas in which the options
8 and challenges need to be particularly considered
9 are waste package deployment, near field safety
10 cases, and of course, the sealing of the
11 boreholes, which has already raised its head this
12 morning.

13 Before I get into these and talk about
14 how you would select options, there is an
15 important point that is worth reiterating.
16 Drilling and casing the borehole and construction
17 of any wellhead facilities is just a large
18 engineering project like any other. It will
19 inevitably encounter problems. These can be
20 tolerated and dealt with and remediated by all the
21 usual methods, but only with the normal
22 operational safety requirements of any large

1 engineering project.

2 However, the arrival of the first active waste
3 package at the wellhead changes the whole
4 situation because it now becomes a nuclear
5 facility, and this means any unplanned
6 intervention could be very difficult and
7 potentially hazardous.

8 So, the success of all subsequent operations
9 and procedures must be virtually guaranteed.

10 I conclude from this that the criteria
11 for selecting from any possible options is they
12 must be simple, they must involve minimal risk and
13 maximum reliability. They must be as fail safe as
14 humanly possible. They must be as fail-safe as humanly
15 possible. This might seem like stating the obvious to
16 this audience, but it's worth remembering.

17 When we come to the issues themselves,
18 starting with waste package deployment, there are
19 two areas in which significant options are
20 available. One is the way in which the packages
21 are deployed, and the other is the question, which
22 Ernie addressed this morning of whether you deploy

1 them singularly or in multiple strings.

2 When it comes to the method of
3 deployment, there are four ways that have been
4 suggested for doing this. First, is free fall.
5 This is not as bizarre as it might seem.

6 (Laughter.)

7 DR. GIBB: Descent rates can be managed
8 by the hydraulic damping effect in the borehole
9 fluid, and terminal velocities can be kept down to
10 like 1 or 2 meters per second, which would
11 effectively eliminate any damage to the packages,
12 even if one fell down the hole, it would still hit
13 the bottom at 1.5 meters per second, which is
14 going to do nothing to an two inch thick steel
15 container.

16 Unfortunately, while it does allow for
17 the fastest way of getting the packages down the
18 hole, there is a horrible lack of control, and
19 it's very difficult to get them back. I think we
20 would happily kick that out.

21 Drill pipe is of course the method that
22 most borehole disposal schemes would advocate. It

1 is a tried and tested method of downhole
2 intervention, and it is well within the
3 capabilities of the oil and gas industry, the
4 drilling industry.

5 Unfortunately, the need to screw the
6 sections of drill pipe together, as we saw this
7 morning, makes it quite slow, and realistic run
8 trip times are probably in excess of 18 hours. It
9 also requires fairly skilled operators to achieve
10 any sort of reasonable run trip time, and of
11 course, the drill rig to be kept on the site until
12 end of the deployment program.

13 Wireline is the traditional method of
14 speeding up downhole operations, but while it can
15 be run very fast, it does have problems. There
16 are load limits. The wirelines can stretch,
17 control is difficult, and fast running carries the
18 risk of entanglements, which necessitate that the
19 early part of the running on the down trip has to
20 be done very slowly and carefully, which means
21 realistically you would be lucky with wireline to
22 get the run trip time down to about six hours.

1 Coiled tubing is a relatively recent
2 method of downhole intervention, which has been
3 successfully developed and used by the oil and gas
4 industry. It is fast, reliable, and you can have
5 electrical conductors inside the tube, which opens
6 up all sorts of possibilities for remote
7 operations, monitoring, and various other things
8 you might wish to do. It is a very good way of
9 doing it because it is more reliable than wireline
10 and it doesn't have the complications of drill
11 pipe.

12 That is a typical coiled tubing rig,
13 which would replace the drilling rig at the
14 wellhead once the casing had been set. The tubing
15 comes in various diameters and wall thicknesses,
16 and therefore, strengths. It has been
17 successfully run to over 10 kilometers. It can
18 take loads up to and even beyond 40 tons, and it can
19 make between 100 and 200 run trips before the
20 coiled tubing requires replacement. It is quite
21 cost effective.

22 Most deep borehole schemes, of course,

1 have suggested that the packages be deployed one
2 at a time, but in 1983,
3 Woodward and Clyde raised the possibility that
4 packages could be assembled into strings and
5 lowered in a single operation. This idea was
6 carried through much of the MIT work, and into the
7 Sandia reference design where it has evolved as we
8 heard earlier into 200-meter long strings of 40
9 packages weighing just under 70 tons.

10 This raises a number of issues that we
11 need to think about. Obviously, with that weight,
12 they can only be deployed by drill pipe. The
13 combined weight of the drill pipe and the drill
14 string would require a very big rig. Our experts
15 tell me they would need at least a 300-ton
16 capacity rig to do that, and Ernie gave probably a
17 more accurate figure this morning.

18 Running rigidly coupled strings of
19 packages also brings up the issues of the limits
20 to well tortuosity. If the clearance between the string
21 of packages and the casing, particularly with offset
22 couplings, if these are used, means the well tortuosity

1 has to be minimal, and it raises serious issues.

2 As we saw illustrated beautifully in the
3 previous talks, it requires very complex wellhead
4 engineering. You have to have a lot of hardware
5 beneath the shielded facility. You have to have
6 the remote operation of tongs, slips, collars, et
7 cetera. It also involves very elaborate package
8 design, with all the screw threads, ways of
9 connecting them, which of course, are not required
10 for single package operations.

11 Assembly of strings of packages at the
12 wellhead increases the time the packages spend at
13 the wellhead, and therefore, the time for things
14 to go wrong, the probability of things going wrong
15 because of so many complicated operations, and bits of
16 engineering, and of course, that brings in the workforce
17 dosage problem, and of course, serious cost implications.

18 For high heat generating waste, like
19 spent fuel, the protracted time at the wellhead to
20 assemble strings may not be advisable. It might
21 carry an increased risk and it could require the
22 addition of extra safety measures.

1 If we go back to the original rationale
2 behind multi-package deployment, it was, quite
3 simply, to save time on a large number of
4 individual run trips, at a time when the only real
5 way of placing the packages was by drill string.

6 The appearance of a fast and reliable method
7 like coiled tubing could completely negate this
8 rationale, and so I would suggest that before
9 anyone considers multi-package, we really look
10 carefully at the justification for it, and the
11 exercise we heard about earlier was discrimination
12 analysis between drill pipe and wireline seems to
13 me to be going in the right direction.

14 Now one of the benefits often advanced for
15 deep boreholes is that they can use almost any
16 type of solid waste, and they can cope with almost
17 any amount of heat. The emphasis is on the
18 geological barrier, but it is still a multi-
19 barrier concept. The near field barriers still
20 consist of the waste form, the infill, the
21 container, and the annuli between the package and
22 the casing and the casing and the rock.

1 When it comes to the role of these
2 barriers in the safety case, there are two
3 completely opposing views. One says that once a
4 disposal zone is sealed off, any escape of
5 radionuclides from the near field is irrelevant
6 because the isolation is ensured by the geological
7 barrier.

8 The other view argues that irrespective
9 of any of that, the safety case should be
10 maximized by making near field barriers as robust
11 as reasonably achievable.

12 If we look at the individual near field
13 barriers, taking the waste form first as I have
14 just said, boreholes can cope with almost any sort
15 of solid waste, but most of the candidate waste
16 forms that have been put forward, like spent fuel
17 and vitrified reprocessing waste and so on, are
18 already in a fairly suitable form, or a very
19 suitable form, for borehole disposal. Others,
20 like the Cesium capsules we have been hearing
21 about, are already packaged.

22 It might be quite difficult to justify

1 the risks and the costs of trying to process the
2 waste forms into something that was a bit more
3 durable when it is already good enough.

4 The only possible exception to this
5 might be where a substantial volume reduction
6 could be achieved, for example, by consolidating
7 fuel pins to get three or four times as many into
8 the container.

9 The waste form needs to be surrounded by
10 some sort of infill in order to prevent
11 deformation and damage to the containers by the
12 hydrostatic pressure down the hole and the axial load
13 stresses. Lots of materials have been suggested
14 for this, cement, glass, lead, and so on. Really,
15 these need to be properly evaluated along with
16 other materials. It is essential that the
17 container is in-filled.

18 The container itself offers a range of
19 possibilities, from the relatively economic carbon
20 steel, mild steel, as we saw earlier, drill pipe, right
21 through to the very expensive pure copper and
22 titanium containers suggested by some people. A

1 possible compromise would be to copper plate
2 stainless steel.

3 The main criteria for selection of a
4 container for borehole disposal are the mechanical
5 strengths required and the extent to which it
6 needs to resist corrosion. The mechanical
7 properties are easy. They are a simple matter of
8 engineering calculation. The corrosion resistance
9 issue is more difficult, and it ties into the next
10 thing, which is what happens in the annuli between
11 the package and the wall rock.

12 If these annuli are simply left with
13 water or drilling mud in them or even if they have
14 an incomplete well cementing job done, the
15 groundwater will have ready access to the casing
16 and the containers, and this could raise issues of
17 corrosion and of gas migration of corrosion
18 products up the annulus.

19 If on the other hand, these annuli are
20 filled with what we refer to as a sealing and
21 support matrix, this will prevent access of the
22 groundwater to the casing and the containers, at

1 least for quite a long time, maybe not
2 indefinitely, but long enough to greatly reduce
3 any corrosion effects, and it will block off any
4 gas migration path up the annulus.

5 Among the things that have been
6 suggested for this are special lead-based alloy
7 high-density support matrix or a specially
8 formulated cementitious grout. The usefulness of
9 this and other options really need to be examined
10 and considered. The borehole annuli should not be
11 left unfilled.

12 Now we come to the big issue of sealing.
13 If the isolation provided by the depth and the
14 geological barriers is not to be compromised, it
15 is imperative that the borehole itself does not
16 provide an easy route back to the surface than the
enclosing geology.

17 ZOBACK: Fergus, excuse me, just a
18 time check. You have about seven or eight minutes
19 left.

20 DR. GIBB: That's okay. I am near the
21 end.

22 Most people would agree that the

1 disposal zone should be permanently sealed, but if
2 once the activities cease and the hole is sealed
3 and backfilled, the groundwater, the saline
4 groundwater gradients will reestablish themselves
5 in the borehole, and if they do so, they will act
6 as a deterrent to upward flow, just as they do in
7 the surrounding rock.

8 It may be that the disposal zone only
9 needs to be sealed off for long enough for these
10 salinity gradients to reestablish themselves in the
11 borehole, and this could be as little as a couple
12 of hundred years.

13 We really need to resolve this issue of
14 how long does the borehole really need to be
15 sealed for. Obviously, the answer to that will be
16 site specific, it will depend on the local
17 conditions and on the permeability of the
18 backfill, but it is something which really needs
19 to be resolved because it has important
20 implications for sealing the boreholes.

21 Most borehole sealing is done by
22 conventional methods. Most borehole disposal

1 schemes have looked to the oil and gas industry
2 for ways of sealing the wells, and this, which is
3 the Sandia reference design, probably represents
4 the peak of sealing a borehole disposal by a
5 combination of conventional methods.

6 The problem with conventional methods,
7 which is to use materials like cement and
8 concrete, clays, asphalt and so on, which are
9 simply pumped down the hole with or without
10 removal of the casing and allowed to sit.
11 Alternatively, mechanical devices like swell
12 packers can be used.

13 The problem with these is no matter how
14 durable the material; the interface with the rock
15 is always a zone of potential weakness. It could
16 develop into the path of least resistance for any
17 fluid seeking to flow up and down the hole.

18 We have to conclude that such
19 conventional seals are unlikely to retain their
20 integrity for the sort of times we are looking
21 for.

22 Recognizing these problems, particularly

1 with clay-based seals, Roland Pusch and his
2 colleagues in Sweden have developed more advanced
3 seals in which they use perforated super
4 containers made of copper or bronze, filled with
5 compacted swelling clays. These are pushed down
6 the hole into the drilling mud or deployment mud,
7 and as they hydrate, the clay swells out through
8 the perforations and creates a sealing pressure in
9 the annulus.

10 Another attempt to produce a better seal
11 is Olympic Research's ceramic plug, where they
12 emplace a charge of metal oxide, based on the
13 thermite principle. They grind away a bit of the
14 casing, ignite the charge, which self sinters
15 progressively, and leaves behind a robust and
16 durable oxide seal.

 Unfortunately, the problem
17 with all of these seals is the existence of the
18 disturbed rock zone around the borehole. The
19 fractures and micro fractures of this disturbed
20 rock zone can extend into the wall rock for 10s of
21 the permeability of the disturbed rock zone by a
22 centimeters and their interconnectivity can increase

1 couple orders of magnitude. This will remain as a
2 potential bypass of any conventional seals for a deep
3 borehole disposal, and it would be identified as
4 the dominant release pathway in any performance
5 assessment or safety case.

6 As a response to that, we are working to
7 develop a method of permanently sealing the
8 borehole by rock welding, which will also
9 eliminate the disturbed rock zone. We cut away or
10 grind away part of the casing, and emplace some
11 crushed backfill, host-rock, and then follow it
12 with an electrical heating device attached to the
13 surface by an umbilical cord, and then top it off
14 with more crushed host-rock to bury the heater.
15 We then apply power to the heater sufficient to
16 partially melt the rock, the backfill, and the
17 host-rock for a reasonable distance beyond the
18 borehole wall.

19 Subsequent cooling allows when the power
20 is switched off or reduced, allows it to recrystallize
21 under controlled conditions to generate the
22 correct size, avoid tracking, and annealing any

1 fractures.

2 These seals could be repeated at
3 intervals up the hole with spaces between filled
4 with other sealants, and the big questions, I
5 think, that we really need to be addressing are
6 how long do we need to seal the borehole for, and
7 how should we do it.

8 Undoubtedly, this workshop will identify
9 many such issues and hopefully resolve some of
10 them. They will almost certainly identify areas
11 where the technology is not yet in place.

12 I would just like to leave you with a
13 final thought, which is a quotation from the
14 President of the Institution of Civil Engineers at
15 the awards ceremony in London last week, and it
16 was this, "When you hear about a new idea, don't
17 ask yourself what's wrong with it, ask what can we
18 do to make it work."

19 Thank you.

20 (Applause.)

21 ZOBACK: Thank you very much,
22 Fergus. That was a really great review. We are

1 just about at 1:00 on break. Are there any really quick
2 questions for Fergus? Otherwise, you can catch
3 him at the break.

4 (No response.)

5 ZOBACK: Okay. Let's take a break,
6 and we will start again promptly at 1:15 with the
7 first of our panel discussions on drilling and
8 drilling experience.

9 (Whereupon, the meeting was adjourned for a
brief recess, and the rest of the meeting was transcribed by
another firm.)

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

1 CERTIFICATE OF NOTARY PUBLIC

2

3 I, CHRISTINE ALLEN, the officer before whom the
4 foregoing proceeding was taken, do hereby certify
5 that the proceedings were recorded by me and
6 thereafter reduced to typewriting under my
7 direction; that said proceedings are a true and
8 accurate record to the best of my knowledge,
9 skills, and ability; that I am neither counsel
10 for, related to, nor employed by any of the
11 parties to the action in which this was taken;
12 and, further, that I am not a relative or employee
13 of any counsel or attorney employed by the parties
14 hereto, nor financially or otherwise interested in
15 the outcome of this action.

16



17

Christine E. Allen

18

19

CHRISTINE ALLEN

20

Notary Public in and for the
District of Columbia

21

22

AFTERNOON SESSION

1

2 ZOBACK: If we can regroup now, please. We've shifted
3 some of the staff into the audience seats, so I hope we have
4 enough seats. If not, we can bring in more chairs.

5 (Pause.)

6 Okay, everybody, regain your seat, please.

7 I want to begin by thanking DOE and Sandia
8 presenters this morning. I think they gave us a really good
9 overview, a concise overview, of the program that we're going
10 to be focusing on for the rest of the workshop. And, again,
11 thanks to Fergus for that excellent international and, I
12 would say, very balanced perspective on deep borehole
13 drilling or disposal.

14 We are going to begin with sort of the first
15 obvious step of a program like this, and that is with the
16 drilling of the hole. And, in particular, we have assembled
17 a series of international experts with vast experience in
18 deep drilling in crystalline rocks, and that's the title and
19 topic of the panel. And we have three speakers.

20 And just as way of background, we're going to have
21 a series of panel discussions. The speakers have all been
22 asked to make brief ten-minute presentations. They're going
23 to go one after the other. And then we'll have 40 to 45
24 minutes for discussion, so hopefully ample discussion time.

25 And I'd like to begin by introducing the first

1 panel. I will be the moderator of that panel, Mary Lou
2 Zoback, member of the Board. And the three panelists in the
3 order that they'll be speaking--and in all cases I have been
4 giving really brief biographies, not to slight people, but
5 you all have written biographies in the materials handed out.

6 So staying with brief introductions, the first
7 speaker will be Steve Hickman. He's from the USGS and Menlo
8 Park, where he is a research geophysicist. Steve is
9 currently the Director of the Earthquake Science Center there
10 at the USGS. He has extensive experience working in
11 boreholes drilled for scientific and geothermal purposes, and
12 his particular area of expertise is looking at stress
13 fractures and fluid flow in the subsurface.

14 Next we'll move to Claus Chur. He is a petroleum
15 and drilling engineer by training. He worked a number of
16 years in industry. He then went on to become eventually the
17 Technical Director of the German Deep Drilling Program, which
18 is commonly referred to as KTB. I won't try to say that in
19 German. He is now a private consultant, but, again,
20 extensive field experience.

21 And, finally, we have Eric van Oort. His
22 background is in chemical physics. He is now a professor at
23 University of Texas at Austin; however he worked 20-plus
24 years in industry for Shell. He was very involved in both
25 continental and offshore drilling, wellbore stability, real

1 time analysis, and, again, bringing to the panel extensive
2 experience, none in the nuclear area, but with drilling in
3 general.

4 So without further ado, I am going to ask Steve to
5 come. And, again, we'll have all three brief presentations
6 back-to-back and then questions.

7 HICKMAN: Thank you, Mary Lou, and thank you for an
8 opportunity to speak to you today. My talk could just as
9 easily be entitled "Geomechanical Consequences", to drilling,
10 casing, and disposal of radioactive wastes in deep boreholes.

11 This is a brief cartoon illustrating one of the
12 concepts I want to get across, and that is the crust is in a
13 state of incipient frictional failure. This is looking down
14 on a fault here, the two horizontal principal stresses, a
15 maximum and a minimum principal stress, creating a shear
16 stress and a normal stress on that fault. The fault will
17 start to slip if you raise the fluid pressure or increase the
18 stress to such that the shear increases. And we know from
19 many observations--and Mark Zoback will be talking about this
20 later in Panel 4--that much of the crust is near critically
21 stressed for coefficients of friction to 0.6 - 1.0.

22 Also, when a fault slips, it creates permeability,
23 especially in low-porosity crystalline rocks, which is the
24 foundation of enhanced geothermal systems. In a critically-
25 stressed or near-critically-stressed crust, stresses will

1 increase as you go deeper.

2 Shown here from the KTB well--and I won't try to
3 pronounce it--differential stress as a function of depth down
4 to about 9 kilometers, result of an injection experiment done
5 in this well, which shows, first of all, stress magnitudes
6 are near-critical all the way down to about 8 kilometers, and
7 then small perturbations in fluid pressure cause slip along
8 faults and fractures, producing earthquakes, further
9 demonstrating that the crust is in a state of incipient
10 frictional failure at KTB.

11 This is, again, a common observation that Mark
12 Zoback will be discussing later.

13 How do breakouts and tensile cracks form? We
14 mentioned borehole failure in a couple of the presentations
15 today already. This just shows a diagram of a borehole
16 drilled in rock, vertical borehole, impinged upon by maximum
17 and minimum principal stresses. Both stresses concentrate
18 around the well and cause brittle failure called breakouts
19 along the minimum principal stress direction and tensile
20 cracks along the maximum.

21 This is a plot showing the circumferential or hoop
22 stress around the well that causes the breakouts and causes
23 the borehole to fail. And one of the main points I want to
24 make this morning is that when you drill a well, you perturb
25 the stress field, it causes failure that has consequences for

1 the damage zone around the well, including breakouts, which
2 have been mentioned before. The width of the breakouts is
3 determined by the magnitude of the stress concentration when
4 it exceeds the compressive strength and the tensile cracks
5 form 90 degrees away. It's possible to use these
6 observations to produce complete *in situ* stress models, which
7 would be a part of any project to do a pilot waste disposal
8 effort.

9 Very importantly, when you increase the borehole
10 temperature, which might happen after you emplace a canister,
11 that causes an increase in sigma theta-theta, or the hoop
12 stress, around the well, cause the breakouts to get bigger
13 and wider, and that'll increase the damage zone around the
14 well. So there are thermal consequences in terms of borehole
15 failure.

16 This is a couple of examples of drilling-induced
17 borehole failure from the San Andreas Fault Observatory at
18 Depth project near Parkfield that Mark, Bill Ellsworth, and I
19 led. You can see breakouts here in an acoustic image. This
20 is essentially like you would take in the borehole and split
21 it and then unrolled it along the north direction. You see
22 breakouts very clearly there, tensile cracks 90 degrees away,
23 in an electrical image log, a different kind of imaging log,
24 and then a cross-section of the breakouts here showing what
25 they look like. They're rather large tensile cracks at 90

1 degrees.

2 You can characterize stress regimes in the earth
3 relative to the magnitudes of the principal stresses in
4 relation to the vertical stress. Relatively extensional
5 stress fields are normal faulting; as you get higher and
6 higher horizontal compression, you go into strike-slip and
7 then reverse faulting. It all depends on the relative
8 magnitudes of the two horizontal principal stresses and the
9 vertical stress.

10 Very importantly, most of the U.S. is in a state of
11 compressional failure, a combination of strike-slip shown by
12 these arrows pointing together, a combination of strike-slip
13 and reverse faulting. And most of the areas being discussed
14 for nuclear disposal in boreholes are thus in a compressional
15 stress regime, either strike-slip or reverse. This has
16 important consequences for failure around a well.

17 How deep do you have to go to see breakouts in a
18 well depends upon the stress regime that you're in. This is
19 a theoretical calculation from Moos and Zoback, showing the
20 depth to the initiation of breakouts, depending on rock
21 strength for a pure strike-slip environment, strike-slip
22 transitional to normal faulting, strike-slip transitional to
23 reverse. As you can see, you get breakouts at much shallower
24 depths in highly compressive stress regimes than you do in
25 extensile stress regimes. Thus, in most of the areas

1 discussed here at this workshop, you should get breakouts
2 forming at relatively shallow depths.

3 If you take the range of strengths for granite,
4 typically 100 to 200 MPa, this tells you that for a pure
5 strike-slip you'd be getting faulting to start at a depth--
6 I'm sorry--breakouts to start at a depth of about 1.5
7 kilometers; and the deeper you go, the bigger the breakouts
8 become.

9 In some cases--this is an example from a well in
10 Russia--the stresses are so high--this is transitional
11 strike-slip to reverse faulting--the breakouts at about 3
12 kilometers, which is shown here, become extremely large.
13 This is a cross-section of the borehole taken from an
14 acoustic borehole televiewer log. Circles just show the
15 drill pipe joints and drill bit sizes for reference. You can
16 see the breakouts go out extremely far away from the
17 borehole. This is an extreme case, but it's something you
18 should be prepared for in any project like this when you
19 drill to these kind of depths in the compressional stress
20 regime.

21 Next point I want to make is that rocks don't fail
22 all at once. They fail progressively. So although you may
23 see a breakout in a wellbore, what's behind the breakout is a
24 lot of damage; it's called the damage zone. And that damage
25 consists of microcracks. And this is illustrated with this

1 very nice series of laboratory experiments done by Dave
2 Lockner and his colleagues where they tracked the failure of
3 a rock under compression by monitoring the acoustic
4 emissions; think of them as ultra-ultra-small earthquakes as
5 the rock progress to failure.

6 So here is the stress strain curve during those
7 experiments. The rock starts to dilate at about 60 percent
8 of the peak stress. That's where the rock actually breaks
9 and fails, so only 60 percent up to failure, you're already
10 getting dilatancy and damage. This is important to keep in
11 mind. When you see acoustic emissions starting to show up,
12 those are all grain-scale fracturing events. When you get to
13 this point, peak stress, and then start to roll over and
14 fail, you get coalescence of those damaging events into
15 throughgoing faults that eventually result in macroscopic
16 failure. So the failure process occurs gradually; and when
17 it does, it accumulates a lot of damage.

18 And one of the important things to realize about
19 this damage that in low-porosity crystalline rock, that
20 damage creates permeability. This is an experimental result
21 from Wong and Zhu, showing permeability for low-porosity
22 rocks and high-porosity rocks from the onset of dilatancy to
23 peak stress. Rocks over here are granites and gabbros, the
24 kind of rocks we're talking about disposing of waste in here.
25 You can see that in that interval from onset of dilatancy to

1 peak stress, there's a considerable amount of permeability
2 gain up to a factor of 8, and the permeability gain keeps
3 increasing as you roll over and the sample fails.

4 Now, damage zones aren't the only way to get
5 fractures around a breakout that create problems with seal
6 integrity. Another way is by just the tensile cracks and the
7 interaction between tensile cracks and natural fractures in
8 the borehole itself.

9 This shows some examples of a borehole televiewer
10 and Formation MicroScanner log from a geothermal well in
11 granite, the Coso Geothermal Field. You can see tensile
12 fractures here in green of various kinds interacting with
13 natural fractures, which show up here as sine waves, and that
14 produces fluid pathways that could carry you past seals. So
15 when you worry about seal integrity, you have to worry about
16 not only microcrack damage, as I showed in the earlier slide,
17 but also these more macroscopic tensile and cooling cracks
18 interacting with these preexisting natural fractures to
19 create fluid pressure bypass, fluid bypass.

20 This slide is very complicated, and I don't want to
21 spend too much time on it, but the important point is here,
22 we've done a lot of work in geothermal fields, characterizing
23 natural fractures with image logs in relation to the stress
24 field. One thing we see very typically is a great number of
25 fractures. Here each dot represents a fracture on a

1 particular kind of lower hemisphere plot. If you're a
2 geologist, you'll understand this. But each one of these
3 dots is a fracture of different orientations. We can then
4 see that only a few of these fractures, six in this case,
5 have enough permeability to actually make this well a
6 producing geothermal well. These are extremely permeable
7 fractures. A number of other fractures shown here in blue
8 are slightly permeable. They're shown as--they're indicated
9 to be permeable by perturbations and temperature logs.

10 The important thing here is that these fractures
11 can exist in granitic rock in geothermal fields pretty much
12 anywhere; and when you're drilling, you don't know they're
13 coming. So you can drill and drill and drill and hit
14 nothing, and all of a sudden you hit a fracture, and it's a
15 surprise. Two or three of those fractures, you have a
16 geothermal-producing well.

17 What happens if you don't hit them and you're a
18 couple meters away? How do you know you're safe? And that's
19 one of the concerns I have in the context of this project.
20 There are a lot of fractures in the crust. Some of them are
21 very fast fluid pathways. And unless you intersect them with
22 a borehole, how do you know they're nearby and could create a
23 problem?

24 So, in summary, extensive wellbore failure will
25 complicate drilling completion and seal installation and

1 could compromise long-term integrity of the seals. Breakouts
2 become more severe with depth and can even lead to complete
3 circumferential failure, especially in reverse faulting
4 stress regimes. Severe breakouts could pose major challenges
5 to drilling and completion.

6 Breakouts could pose operational challenges when
7 cementing casing and setting multiple seals in long open-hole
8 interval above the waste canisters. And high-permeability
9 damage zones produced by breakouts, drilling-induced tensile
10 fractures, and dilated natural fractures could provide short-
11 circuit pathways around seals. And it is important to point
12 out that when you drill through a fault, sometimes you
13 actually trigger a slip through the stress perturbation from
14 drilling or the excess fluid pressures from the drilling
15 fluid. So this is a real concern.

16 Increasing temperature after canister emplacement
17 could lead to an increase in the compressive hoop stress
18 around the well, promoting more breakout growth and borehole
19 enlargement. Thermal pressurization of fluids, which hasn't
20 been discussed, could reactivate nearby faults, increase
21 fracture permeability. Hydrothermal convection is a
22 potential problem that needs to be evaluated; and
23 microcracking due to differential thermal expansion, which
24 has been demonstrated in the laboratory, especially in
25 quartz-rich rocks, has to be taken into account when thinking

1 of melting in the borehole or high-temperature rock behavior
2 around a canister. This can lead to a three-order-of-
3 magnitude increase in permeability. We know this from tests
4 on granite, so it has to be taken into account when talking
5 about melting seals.

6 And last but not least, we know when drilling in
7 geothermal wells we can hit fractures suddenly and without
8 warning that have a lot of permeability. How can we be
9 assured in this project that these high-permeability
10 fractures or faults will not be so close to the borehole that
11 they'll cause a problem and compromise geologic containment?

12 Thank you.

13 ZOBACK: Thank you, Steve.

14 CHUR: Well, good afternoon. And, first of all, I would
15 like to thank the Review Board for having invited me to this
16 conference. Professor Gibb already pointed out during the
17 lunch presentation that the issue is also at the moment
18 actual in Germany as well, and we will see how that will
19 proceed.

20 I will briefly show you--share some experience in
21 drilling projects in crystalline rocks, specifically on the
22 drilling performance, directional control, borehole
23 stability, and the value of a characterization hole. And, of
24 course, during the discussion we can address much more issues
25 like casing scheme or other things.

1 This is a similar slide you've seen this morning
2 from David. It just summarizes some of the wells which have
3 been drilled over the last couple of decades in crystalline
4 rocks. And I show that basically--that's the second slide on
5 this--to show that there is quite significant expertise in
6 drilling in crystalline rocks. I just feel obliged to say a
7 word on the KTB approach, because several times there was
8 questions how it is pronounced in German, so it was called
9 the Continental Deep Drilling Program of the Federal Republic
10 of Germany.

11 So this shows some of the drilling performance you
12 typically can expect in crystalline rock. And, as you see,
13 it more or less varies between one and three meters per hour.

14 ZOBACK: The ROP; right?

15 CHUR: The ROP is the rate--thank you--I forgot about--
16 the ROP is the rate of penetration here measured in meters
17 per hour. And probably the figure from the geothermal
18 project in California was eight meters; it's a little bit
19 unexceptional. And, of course, at the end of the day it just
20 depends, of course, on the local situation on the compressive
21 strengths and compactation of the rock.

22 So this shows you the drilling performance of the
23 KTB main well; in green the rate of penetration, the red is
24 the bit life, and the blue the footage. And for this project
25 probably the two diameters on the left side are of interest

1 to 17-1/2 inch and 4-3/4. 17-1/2 inch was drilled down to
2 3,000 meters, 4-3/4 down to 6,000 meters--that's something
3 you talk here in this project. And, again, you see the ROP,
4 of course, is significantly less than in oil and gas.

5 Directional control has been addressed several
6 times today and generally addressed in context with
7 crystalline rock drilling. You see here on the left--you
8 must not read the figures. It's more to get an impression.
9 On the left side you see the horizontal plots of the Kola
10 well, and on the right side you see the horizontal plot,
11 which is a bird's view of a driller if you were looking down
12 the hole from the KTB well.

13 It's important here to realize the different
14 scales. On the right side this (inaudible) all happens
15 within a diameter of 10 meters down to a depth of 7.5
16 kilometers. So the well has been drilled in a cylinder with
17 a diameter of 10 meters; whereas, on the Kola well on the
18 left side the distance is 5 kilometers.

19 So how can that be achieved? It was achieved by
20 applying what we called at that time the vertical drilling
21 system, which was at the time basically the prototype for all
22 automatic drilling systems which are applied today primarily,
23 of course, for drilling directional holes, drilling
24 horizontal holes, but you see on the right side down to a
25 depth of 7.5 kilometers. Even at that time we were able to

1 drill a technical, absolutely vertical borehole. That also
2 refers to some concerns of the morning on tortuosity, which I
3 think, if you do it right, is not a problem.

4 You also see below 7.5 kilometers, which is down
5 here, the systems couldn't be used anymore due to temperature
6 limits of the electronics. And you see how quickly the well
7 deviates, so I strongly recommend that the wells we are
8 talking here during the workshop certainly should be drilled
9 with the proper directional control. Let's put it that way.

10 Borehole stability, already addressed by Steve.
11 It's probably the challenge in crystalline rocks. And, to
12 me, next to the slower rate of penetration, which is only an
13 issue at the end of cost, the borehole stability is probably
14 the main difference to know drilling in sedimentary rocks.
15 And what you see here is the caliper log from the KTB well
16 from top to 9 kilometers depth. And you see here, of course,
17 the caliper, and you can see that the caliper or the size of
18 the breakouts reach sometimes more than double the size, the
19 nominal size, of the bit.

20 However, just the practical experience in the upper
21 part of the hole that's here, the first 3,000 meters, the
22 breakouts didn't cause a real drilling problem. They were
23 there, but they didn't cause a real drilling problem, where
24 in the lower parts, actually, they caused huge problems and
25 more or less were the predominant factor next to money that

1 the project has to be finished at 9 kilometers.

2 But in my view--but there are much better experts
3 here in the room--that is, among other issues, very much
4 depth-dependent. So, from my experience and from the depth
5 regime you're talking, you're down to 5 kilometers, if there
6 are not other, let's say, special stress fields, the normal
7 stress fields, things like that, that should be at least--can
8 be controlled.

9 Of course, next to the borehole stability issue, it
10 is fair to say that we find a lot of fluids and gases in
11 crystalline rocks. And that can be quite sufficient amounts,
12 as you can see in the KTB well, for example, in the pilot
13 hole in a depth of close to 4 kilometers. We did a four-
14 month production test, producing over 700 cubic meters of
15 fluids. And this is basically reported, at least in most
16 projects I am aware of or I have documentations on, that you
17 find throughout the wells influxes of fluids, primarily in
18 the KTB case where there are sodium and calcium chloride
19 fluids, gases, mainly nitrogen and methane.

20 This is a core from the pilot hole in
21 3-1/2-kilometer depth. And, of course, you see that there
22 are quite some significant pathways for fluids. And a very
23 nice piece.

24 The value of a characterization hole cannot be
25 underestimated. I would strongly recommend to do such a

1 characterization or pilot hole. It will, of course, deliver
2 a lot of important data for planning the well for the
3 drillers on the rocks. It will deliver data on where problem
4 zones are, influx zones, breakout zones. It will also give
5 you the opportunity probably to test specific tools, not only
6 for drilling, but also for the geological or, let's say,
7 scientific interpretation.

8 There was one example--it has been mentioned
9 before, the rock flower--the KTB people, the scientists, they
10 developed a method using the underflow of the centrifuge,
11 which is the rock flower, dry it, put it into tablets, and
12 then analyze it with an x-ray analysis and diffractometry
13 analysis. And this gave basically a perfect lithologic and
14 mineralogic profile, much better than the cuttings, because
15 the cuttings are not so easy to put them into the right
16 depth. So these are very nice tools.

17 You can test also the people who will then work at
18 the rig site, the geologists who have to interpretate the
19 cuttings and the logging of people from the service
20 companies. Normally, of course, they are not used to or
21 experienced in interpreting crystalline parameters, but that
22 can be done very well in the pilot hole.

23 The pilot hole also exonerates the Field Test
24 Borehole, the big hole, from a lot of coring, hydrofrac
25 testing, logging programs. So there are a lot of positive

1 things which argue to do a pilot hole.

2 So in conclusion, there is drilling experience
3 available for wells in crystalline rocks; however, even if
4 the experience in crystalline rocks for diameters 12-1/4 inch
5 and bigger, 7-1/2-inch, in great depths, of course, is
6 limited. However, in my view, actually drilling in
7 crystalline rocks doesn't differ so much from drilling in
8 sedimentary rocks.

9 So I would say the drilling expertise which is
10 available in the oil and gas is absolutely sufficient to
11 drill a successful well in a crystalline borehole if you do
12 the things right which we have to do. Also, I've seen in a
13 mined repository you also have to apply proper mining
14 experience. Of course, as we know, the drilling performance,
15 of course, is less borehole instability. That will be a
16 factor in the pilot hole. It's a good thing to do.

17 Thank you very much.

18 ZOBACK: Thank you.

19 VAN OORT: Okay. Good afternoon, everyone. I
20 wanted to start out with a point of criticism. I've seen a
21 lot of what has been done on what you do when you have the
22 borehole, how you're going to evaluate it, how you're going
23 to test it, how you're going to test emplacement, but not on
24 how you're going to drill it. There are bits and pieces
25 there, but there is no comprehensive drilling program. And

1 in Holland where I'm from--which, by the way, is east of
2 Washington--we call that selling the hide before you shot the
3 bear.

4 So I'm going to give you some tips for the drilling
5 program, some things that I think you need to address. So
6 we're going to talk a little bit about bits, about drill
7 string vibrations, about vertical directional drilling. I'll
8 talk a little bit about the consequences of borehole
9 instability, which is stuck pipe, and talk a little bit about
10 isolation and abandonment.

11 And first on bits--if you could start the two
12 videos--what you see on top, this is a polycrystalline
13 diamond compact bit, a PDC bit. It fails rocks in shear;
14 it's a shearing force. On the bottom is a tri-cone rock bit
15 that has inserts in there that are made out of tungsten
16 carbide. That's what we call a rock bit or a tungsten
17 carbide insert bit.

18 And on this graph you see the response of rate of
19 penetration, how fast we make hole, as a function of weight
20 on bit. And you see that PDC bits drill much more
21 efficiently than these rock bits and then another type of
22 bits, which are diamond impact bits.

23 So the point here is that as long as you can keep
24 PDCs in the hole, as long as you can keep them drilling,
25 you're going to be much more efficient. Typically, we go to

1 a tungsten carbide insert bit if we can't keep PDCs in the
2 hole, if the rocks simply become too hard. But what we've
3 seen over the last decade or so is that PDC technology has
4 become so good that it has started to kind of displace rock
5 bits and tungsten carbide bits, and right now we only go to
6 these for the very hardest stuff of formations.

7 And so the main lesson is keep a PDC drilling as
8 long as you can and only if you have to make a change,
9 because then you're down to what Claus already showed you, to
10 these very low penetration rates. I believe that PDCs can
11 drill most shales and most salts, for instance. Only if you
12 go to very hard crystalline rock do we probably have to
13 switch over.

14 There's a lot going on in terms of new bit
15 technology. This is what is called a Kymera bit. It was
16 developed by a friend of mine at Baker Hughes called Rolf
17 Pessier. It's kind of a Frankensteinian clone of a rock bit
18 and a PDC bit. It gives you the high penetration rate of
19 PDCs but with the ability of rock bits and tungsten carbide
20 insert bits to deal with hard stringers. So this stuff can,
21 for instance, drill very hard chert.

22 A Kymera is a beast from mythology. It had the
23 head of a lion, the head of a goat, and the head of snake.
24 It's a bit what my mother-in-law looks like, who is a lovely,
25 lovely woman, by the way.

1 One thing that you will have to contend with if you
2 start to drill a 17- or 17-1/2-inch hole this deep is drill
3 string vibrations. I already want to warn you that that's
4 going to happen.

5 And there are three modes in which the drill string
6 can vibrate. It can vibrate in an axial direction, in a
7 lateral direction, which we call whirl, and in a torsional
8 direction, which is called stick-slip. Stick-slip is where
9 the bit actually stops drilling while you're continuing to
10 wind up the drill string, and then the bit releases
11 violently. And this is a problem drilling hard rocks, and
12 this is actually what destroys most bits. If you 20 years
13 ago would have asked me what destroys bits, I would have said
14 hard rock. Now I say it's drill string vibrations, because
15 we've learned a lot more about these vibrations.

16 And just to give you a feel for this--if you can
17 start this video--this is a video by Schlumberger. And
18 forget about these nice videos that you see where a drill
19 string nicely rotates concentrically in a borehole. This is
20 more what it looks like, and you can see that the drill
21 string is bouncing off the borehole wall and actually
22 starting to change the conditions a little bit. And you see
23 this become much more violent. These are whirl vibrations,
24 and they shock the borehole, so they can create a lot of
25 borehole damage, in addition to the damage mechanisms that

1 Steve already indicated. And they can, of course, also
2 damage the drill string and drill string components,
3 including bits, logging tools, and so on.

4 And this is what might happen if you're going to be
5 drilling with a relatively slender drill string with a large,
6 beefy bottom-hole assembly at 5 kilometers, so definitely
7 something that you need to be concerned about from a drilling
8 perspective. These are level 3 high-gravity shocks that are
9 happening on the borehole wall and on the assembly.

10 Vertical directional drilling, Claus already
11 mentioned it. It's actually not easy to drill a vertical
12 wellbore. That may sound really strange, but it's actually
13 quite difficult. The bit is a little bit like the
14 undergraduate students that Professor Bommer and I teach at
15 UT. They like to take the path of least resistance. And the
16 bit, for instance, will go into a direction where it
17 encounters the least resistance, and it's very sensitive to
18 side forces.

19 Luckily, the technology has been developed to drill
20 perfectly vertical, but you will have to apply those
21 technologies, so you have to use rotary steerables, maybe
22 downhole motors, to keep the well as vertically as possible.
23 And it's really important for when you get deeper. You could
24 imagine, if I put a big kink in the well shallow, and I try
25 to drill deep, I'm going to encounter friction, I'm going to

1 encounter high torque, I'm going to maybe wear a hole in the
2 casing at surface that compromises my barrier. If you want
3 to drill into the Gulf of Mexico at 35,000 feet, which is
4 what we're doing right now, we keep this dogleg severity, the
5 kinks, that we put in the well less than one degree per
6 hundred foot. But this is an important point also for the
7 emplacement of the canisters at the end of the job.

8 Well construction and well abandonment, I was
9 really glad when I saw this graph from Sandia. Not only do I
10 see a fairly mature abandonment plan, apparently you are
11 going to negate some of the problems by constructing these
12 wells in Dubai under Burj Khalifa. I'm, of course, speaking
13 in jest. I don't want to create a diplomatic crisis with the
14 United Emirates. The United States doesn't need my help in
15 creating global diplomatic crises.

16 So stuck pipe, this kind of goes a little bit
17 beyond what Steve said. If the borehole becomes unstable--
18 and you understand the borehole can become immediately
19 unstable, or it could take some time--there are time-delayed
20 mechanisms. And you are looking at fairly high open hole
21 times where the borehole can become unstable over time.

22 And this can have problems with running casing in
23 the hole, getting casing stuck in the hole, so your slotted
24 line there may become stuck in the hole. If you wanted to
25 place canisters in the open hole, a small caving can already

1 stick a canister, for instance. And normally during drilling
2 we have beefy drill pipe. We can pull on the bottom-hole
3 assembly; we can jar on the pipe. That's also what we do
4 during fishing. Your ability to work these canisters in and
5 out of the hole will be limited when we're compromising the
6 integrity of the canisters themselves. So take a look at
7 that.

8 Well isolation and abandonment, I would highly
9 encourage you to study the oil field literature, particularly
10 what is written for offshore abandonments. I've lifted a
11 passage out of the Code of Federal Regulations 250, which
12 governs abandonments for deep borehole wells. You can find
13 them in Sections 1712 through 1721. And I really would
14 encourage you to take a close look at that and see how we
15 abandon oil and gas wells and take that as kind of a minimum
16 standard for the abandonment of these wells that you are
17 going to attempt.

18 One of the things that I want to warn you against
19 is cement. Cement is not a good material. And when I talk
20 about cement, I mean Portland cement. Portland cement, it's
21 sensitive to mud and formation fluid contamination. If you
22 get it to be contaminated with magnesium chloride, for
23 instance, it forms brucite. It doesn't bond particularly
24 well in formations. Clays and shales don't like high-
25 alkaline lime-based chemistry, which is what cement is. It

1 has low tensile strength. If it cracks and it forms these
2 micro-annuli that you already saw Mr. Gibb talk about during
3 the lunch meeting, then these cracks are basically going to
4 stay there.

5 So you should look at new materials. New materials
6 are becoming available. They are actually quite known within
7 the civil engineering community. This is something from my
8 own lab where we have a self-healing cement based on the
9 alkaline-activated materials that we failed--so we actually
10 failed it in the triaxial tester at 1100 psi at failure. And
11 then we allowed it to re-heal under downhole pressure and
12 temperature in the presence of water, and it re-healed
13 completely and then at 21 days showed original strength
14 again. So take a look at those type of materials as well.
15 Just look beyond the stuff that has been used since the
16 Romans used cement, basically.

17 So conclusions and recommendations, this project
18 needs a much more detailed drilling program. And the devil
19 is in the details, right? And the big cost overruns in this
20 project are going to be associated with the drilling. So pay
21 attention to this.

22 The project would technically and economically
23 really benefit from having a good bit expert associated with
24 it to really tell you about the latest in bit developments.
25 Kola and KTB were drilled more than 20 years ago, and lots

1 and lots has happened since on bit technology.

2 Harmful drill string vibrations, I'm already going
3 to warn you about them. They are going to happen, and you
4 want to monitor them and mitigate them.

5 I can't stress the importance of this point enough.
6 Borehole quality, tortuosity, and gauge are very, very
7 important, and they will require good vertical directional
8 drilling and also excellent surveying techniques.

9 Stuck pipe risks of running liners in the hole is
10 an issue if the borehole becomes unstable or is tortuous with
11 a high dogleg severity.

12 In the panel this afternoon I think we'll hear more
13 about well abandonment and barrier installation.

14 And then I would encourage you to look at self-
15 healing alternatives to Portland cement.

16 And the last thing I want to say is Kontinentales
17 Tiefbohrprogramm.

18 ZOBACK: Well, I want to thank each of the speakers for
19 sticking to the time. And we're going to open the
20 presentations up for discussion, but first I want to give the
21 three presenters a chance to ask questions of each other if
22 they have any. And then I have a few questions set up.

23 But do you all have any questions of each other?
24 Are you in violent agreement?

25 CHUR: Not really.

1 ZOBACK: Okay. I want to then begin--getting back to a
2 point that Claus made, and this is with regard to pilot
3 holes.

4 And I want to apologize that it seems that we have
5 our backs to you. The tables are taped down. We couldn't
6 move them, okay? I'll just say that.

7 So with regard to pilot holes, Claus, you outlined
8 all the advantages of having a pilot hole. In looking
9 forward, if this initial test is very successful and we move
10 on, do you all anticipate a pilot hole would always need to
11 be drilled before a disposal hole was drilled?

12 HICKMAN: Want to start?

13 ZOBACK: However.

14 CHUR: I certainly would recommend the pilot hole in
15 conjunction with the Field Test Borehole.

16 ZOBACK: Right.

17 CHUR: And so if then that is basically accomplished and
18 you will decide on a real borehole for a real dispository,
19 then certainly I would recommend to do here a pilot hole as
20 well. The question will then be how many wells, let's say,
21 from a site would be drilled for the dispository. But for
22 this specific location, yes, you should drill a pilot hole,
23 because that gives you at least next to other slide like
24 geophysical interpretation. The only chance to understand
25 what is really downhole indicating at least to why

1 catastrophic failures may be in the location selection.

2 And if I can add one more word here, I understood
3 from discussions outside of this room that the location for
4 the Field Test Borehole and the pilot hole maybe is selected
5 based on availability of proper appropriate ground or so. I
6 would think you should think over that approach, because I
7 think this test site should be selected more or less under
8 the same criteria as the real project, because what will you
9 do if you were to take a wrong location for the test phase
10 and it goes wrong? Then I think that the project is over.

11 ZOBACK: Good point.

12 Steve, did you have something to add?

13 HICKMAN: I'm going to violently agree with that,
14 because I don't think you can predict subsurface stress,
15 structural complexity, heterogeneity, or rock properties from
16 the surface adequately. So any disposal site would have to
17 be preceded by at least one pilot hole if not more. That
18 would also allow surface-based geophysics, for example 2- or
19 3-D seismics, and shooting into the well to characterize the
20 formation.

21 And I think that that kind of three-dimensional
22 characterization of the environment before you even think
23 about doing a deep borehole disposal is absolutely essential.
24 The crust is a heterogeneous place. It is hard to really
25 determine where the fractures and faults are from the

1 surface. We know this from studies of induced seismicity and
2 other things happening in crystalline basement rocks. So we
3 need to be very careful and judicious about three-dimensional
4 site characterization. That includes drilling at least one
5 pilot hole to characterize the formation.

6 I was similarly concerned about the choice of the
7 pilot hole project sites, because it seems to me there is
8 missing an overarching set of criteria for what constitutes a
9 representative disposal site, not going for the places that
10 are convenient or that one PI might propose, but what would
11 constitute the best possible site and then characterize that
12 with the pilot project so there's maximum transfer value to
13 characterizing other potential sites. I worry about transfer
14 value, so each project has to build upon our knowledge and be
15 facing towards a coherent goal.

16 And, again, I think that you cannot do this project
17 properly without drilling at least one pilot project well at
18 every site and then doing sophisticated state-of-the-art
19 geophysical imaging into and away from that borehole to look
20 for fractures, faults, and heterogeneity that are going to
21 cause people problems.

22 ZOBACK: Eric, would you like to add anything to that?

23 VAN OORT: They said it all.

24 ZOBACK: Okay. One thing I think you just touched on,
25 Steve, that hasn't been discussed much at all, but we know

1 from other scientific borehole drilling projects that they
2 often begin with an extensive phase of site characterization.
3 I believe that was certainly true for the KTB hole. I
4 imagine when you drill a 35,000-foot-deep hole in the Gulf of
5 Mexico, you have done that based on a lot of data collected
6 beforehand, so you hope you have an idea of what--

7 HICKMAN: Absolutely, that's a \$300 million well, so--

8 ZOBACK: Right, right, exactly. And tying this to the
9 pilot hole and the issues that, whereas logging will give you
10 information about the immediate vicinity of the wellbore,
11 understanding the setting on the scale of meters to tens of
12 meters, you have an opportunity for a crosshole test, which
13 some of you briefly touched on.

14 But how important do you think that capability is?
15 So I guess there's a two-part question. We will have a test
16 borehole site, which will sample the subsurface at that one
17 point. And if we wanted to then carry that over to a broader
18 program, absent the detailed site characterization, when you
19 go to the next site, how do you know that you're likely to
20 encounter something similar or different? And I'm thinking
21 about surface geophysics; I'm thinking about seismic; I'm
22 thinking about electrical methods, that sort of thing.

23 So comments? And maybe you'd like to talk about
24 the KTB experience, Claus.

25 CHUR: I just probably would like to add, with respect

1 to the pilot holes, I think that the setup for the Field
2 Test/Characterization Hole, the two-well approach is the
3 right one. For the real disposal project, probably you might
4 also consider to do a few more wells, but with mining
5 technology. At least I'm aware of 4,000-meter-deep wells and
6 mining technology from South America--I'm sorry--from South
7 Africa, which, of course, are much cheaper and much faster.
8 So for a final project could mention to drill a few of them
9 to be a hundred percent sure that's the right location.

10 ZOBACK: Okay. Steve?

11 HICKMAN: Yeah, I mean, in the San Andreas Fault
12 Observatory at Depth project, we spent years on site
13 characterization, winnowing down from seven to four to one
14 site. And that was absolutely essential. But we are still
15 surprised when we drill. So drilling always teaches you that
16 you're not as smart as you think you are. And my concern is
17 that we can design the best possible site characterization
18 program in the world and still be surprised by what we drill
19 into. I think you have to do that.

20 If you're serious about doing this--and I have some
21 concerns, really serious ones, about the ability to predict
22 what we're going to find before we drill--you have to have an
23 intensive site characterization program to look for basement
24 faults, for example, that might be offsetting overlying
25 strata. But even then, you know, many faults in crystalline

1 basement are invisible, because they were eroded away, and
2 there were no reflecting horizons to reveal their presence.
3 And sometimes you don't discover basement faults until you
4 pressurize them and produce earthquakes. So, yes, multiple
5 wells.

6 Crosshole surveys are better than surface-only.
7 They can see farther away. You might be able to see 10, 15,
8 20 meters away, maybe 100 meters. But the farther away you
9 see from a well, the less your resolution. So you can see
10 big features at a distance, but those may not be the one- or
11 two-millimeter aperture fractures that carry all the fluid.
12 And we know from geothermal wells, they are often that small.

13 So you should do all of the above in terms of
14 characterizing a site, but realize that you could still miss
15 what you need to know, and there could still be me fractures
16 away that might cause some problem at some point. If you're
17 really talking about a hundred thousand years, that's a much
18 bigger problem than 30,000 or 3,000 years or whatever. So
19 the time duration matters a lot in terms of how much
20 assurance you can have going into a project like this.

21 But drilling will always teach you that you can't
22 do it all from the surface, and the world is a heterogeneous
23 place. And especially in crystalline basement, it's hard to
24 image structures and features in advance. So you will be
25 surprised.

1 And, last but not least, I would prefer to see in,
2 for example, a string of or a circle or whatever of
3 characterization wells, some kind of a monitoring program
4 early on. If you're going to put something down a hole with
5 a heated radioactive canister, it's going to behave
6 differently than any test borehole would. And you want to
7 make sure that you're not losing materials into the geologic
8 formation. What you're treating as a barrier is really
9 behaving as a barrier.

10 And, as a geologist, I'm concerned about this, so I
11 would want to, at least for the first few of these things,
12 actually monitor downhole for safety, use those
13 characterization wells to monitor for unintentional release
14 of radionuclides. This is done in CO2 sequestration projects
15 now, and it should be done in anything like this.

16 ZOBACK: Okay. Eric, do you have comments?

17 VAN OORT: A point that I would like to make is that
18 people often ask me if we can't make drilling like car
19 manufacturing. And the thing with car manufacturing is you
20 control all the factors; whereas, Mother Nature brings in an
21 element of irreducible complexity. And that's what Steve
22 already mentioned. You could be drilling close offset wells
23 and see something completely different.

24 I wanted to go back to something that was said
25 during the Sandia presentation about the use of blowout

1 preventers. The presentation was, do we need them, and,
2 yeah, probably we need them because of regulatory
3 requirements. No, you need them. You absolutely need them.
4 You might be drilling ten wells in the crystalline rock and
5 penetrate no fractures and everything is fine. And then you
6 hit a natural fracture, and you take a big salt kick. And
7 for that one you need the blowout preventer.

8 So you need to always--with these situations, even
9 for close offset, you need to plan for the worst and plan for
10 the fact that you may not control all the factors.

11 ZOBACK: It's probably safe to say that in regard to
12 drilling technologies, using "never" or "impossible" is
13 probably not a good choice of wording in terms of what you
14 potentially could find.

15 Okay. I'm going to open this up more broadly for
16 questions, but I do want to reserve a little time, because at
17 the very end I'd like to give each of you a chance for any
18 final comment you'd like to make.

19 I'm going to first ask Board members if they have
20 questions for the panel, and then I'm going to ask the other
21 panelists, because we have an awful lot of expertise sitting
22 here in the first few rows. And if DOE representatives--or
23 Sandia--would like to make any comments, too, just let me
24 know. But first let's have Board members. Questions? Oh,
25 we've got a quiet--okay, Mr. Peddicord.

1 PEDDICORD: Lee Peddicord from the Board. And this, I
2 think, is primarily to Eric, and it's a little bit beyond the
3 current envisioned program. But we've heard comments today
4 in terms of larger boreholes to accommodate larger packages,
5 spent fuel, and so on. What would be your opinion on the
6 limits of borehole diameter that could serve the purpose of
7 disposal of spent nuclear fuel or radioactive waste?

8 VAN OORT: Claus and I talked about this briefly, and we
9 don't see any technical hurdles right now why a 17-inch,
10 17-1/2-inch borehole couldn't be drilled with today's
11 technology. Drill string--

12 ZOBACK: What about a 60-inch, though, I think is kind
13 of what--

14 VAN OORT: Well, I think we really need to start talking
15 to some real experts on that, particularly within the service
16 industry. This is where I would sit down with some people
17 from companies like Schlumberger, Halliburton, Baker Hughes,
18 and say, What is technically feasible? What weight on bit
19 can we put on a 60-centimeter bit? What kind of torque can
20 we generate?

21 ZOBACK: Oh, I was saying 60 inches, not 60--

22 VAN OORT: 60 inches, right.

23 CHUR: It's getting bigger and bigger.

24 ZOBACK: Well, just to get your minds rolling.

25 VAN OORT: This is already quite exceptional, right?

1 Typically, at these depths we're down to 12-1/4,
2 8-1/2-inch hole, and those have been historically the
3 boreholes that we've drilled at this depth. We think the 17
4 inches is feasible. But, beyond that, you really have to get
5 a final true drill string and bid experts together and say,
6 Can this technically be done?

7 ZOBACK: Okay, good. Anybody--Claus?

8 CHUR: Well, I'm aware--I think there is a gas disposal
9 in close by New York where they drilled a 1500-meter-deep
10 well, I think, a diameter of a little bit over a meter.
11 However, it was hammer drilling. That is actually something
12 which, if you do research and you have a recommendation to
13 look at new bit technology, absolutely its important and has
14 been done a lot in the last decade.

15 That also, I think, applies for getting the status
16 on hammer drilling. That has been done through
17 developmental, of course, hammer drilling would be the
18 fastest drilling option for crystalline rock.

19 ZOBACK: And that would be dry?

20 CHUR: Not necessarily dry. It's a variety between dry,
21 mist, foam, fluids. So that's an optimization process. And,
22 of course, I think in the '50s, '60s, you did bigger holes.
23 I'm not sure about the state, but for military munition
24 tests. I think they would be 1/2 to 2 meters wide.
25 Basically--

1 ZOBACK: --lower men, people down them.

2 CHUR: Yeah. We'd be basically, I think, come here to a
3 point where we cross the border from normal rotary drilling--
4 to use the old word--toward shaft sinking. So the diameter
5 is not really, I think, a limitation. In the end it comes
6 down to cost.

7 ZOBACK: Sure.

8 VAN OORT: This is the way unconventional wells are
9 being drilled in Pennsylvania, for instance, right, with air
10 hammers, with air going to depths somewhere at 5,000 feet and
11 drilling with an air package with a specialized small truck-
12 mounted rig to do that. As soon as you start getting
13 influxes into the borehole, as soon as water comes into the
14 borehole, as soon as you need to apply overbalance with mud,
15 then you have to switch to more conventional re-drilling
16 techniques.

17 ZOBACK: Okay, thank you.

18 Any more questions from the Board?

19 Okay, let's go to the other panelists, those of
20 you--okay, Narasi, yes. Again, why don't you just come up to
21 the mic and--good.

22 SRIDHAR: Narasi Sridhar from DNV GL. I think Fergus
23 also referred to it in his lunchtime talk, and I think you
24 mentioned it, Eric, about interfaces between cement and the
25 borehole. But my question really is: Have people looked at

1 interfaces between the casing and the cement? What I worry
2 about is the small corrosion of the casing would hydrolyze
3 and cause local acidification, and that would affect the
4 bonding between the cement and the casing and provide an easy
5 leak-back. And this is something we worried about in CCS
6 operations. And I don't know whether you have encountered
7 things like that.

8 VAN OORT: No, absolutely, yeah. So both the cement to
9 formation as well as the cement to casing link is a weak
10 link. It's easily broken. In oil and gas wells it's easily
11 broken because of thermal stresses.

12 So the reason why there are so many cementing
13 issues, for instance, in unconventional wells with gas coming
14 to surface is because the bond between either the cement and
15 the formation or the cement with casing breaks. And that
16 allows methane gas to sometimes come to surface.

17 It is a continuing challenge with Portland cement.
18 And it goes back to the point that I made. We are still
19 using Portland cement. It's time to really look at different
20 materials, different solutions, out-of-the-box thinking. I
21 was really encouraged by what I saw during the lunchtime
22 presentation about creating seals in a completely different
23 way that might also get rid of the near wellbore damage
24 effect.

25 So that is absolutely called for. There are

1 significant technical drawbacks to the use of Portland.

2 ZOBACK: Dick.

3 GARWIN: Dick Garwin, Panel 7. The discussion at this
4 panel reminded me of a simple technical question, and that
5 is, in the literature you see that a small hole may be
6 stable, but a bigger hole is unstable subject to breakout. I
7 don't see any reason why that's so. Why should it be easier
8 to have--except for money--to have a 5-inch-diameter hole to
9 5 kilometers depth than a 20-inch to 5 kilometers depth?

10 HICKMAN: So there are two answers to that. There is a
11 weak dependence of compressive rock strength on sample size.
12 It's not been really well demonstrated, but rocks--when you
13 go from about 7 to 17 inches, in some rock types you'll drop
14 compressive strength about a factor of 2. And that's based
15 on some limited laboratory experiments.

16 There is also the fact you'd be more likely to hit
17 fractures or faults near the wellbore that could cause--
18 because they're relatively cohesion-free, interfaces cause
19 premature spalling, so you can get spalling, because your
20 probability of intersecting fractures goes up as the hole
21 gets bigger; and then there's a size effect in compressive
22 strength.

23 PUSCH: Pusch, Sweden. How do you do--if you get a
24 rockfall in a large-diameter borehole--say around several
25 cubic decimeters--falling out from three intersecting

1 chloride-coated fractures where you get no contact and no
2 effective binding between the concrete and the rock?

3 HICKMAN: So the question is, how do you deal with that?

4 PUSCH: Yeah.

5 HICKMAN: Maybe that's a cementing--well, certainly if
6 it was a chloride-containing fracture, a very weak mineral,
7 it would tend to fall off or shear more readily. So that
8 would create a cave, and then you'd have--with chloride
9 lining. And your question is, how do you bond to that?

10 PUSCH: Right.

11 HICKMAN: I think that's a cementing question.

12 PUSCH: How do you get the cement or the concrete
13 attached to or stay with the rock?

14 VAN OORT: And the answer is, you don't. When the
15 borehole breaks out and it starts enlarging, first of all, it
16 becomes extremely difficult to evacuate all the debris out of
17 the hole, because your annular velocities will go down. So,
18 actually debris will build up in these basically caves, these
19 enlargements, and it's very difficult to circulate that out.

20 And then, also, when you start cementing, the
21 cement in those breakouts, you will usually have gelled-up
22 mud that you can't displace, and the cement will just bypass
23 that. So you'll get a very poorly cemented hole.

24 PUSCH: How about reaming the hole and then casting
25 concrete there and then rebore the hole?

1 VAN OORT: There's a comment that I wanted to make
2 already earlier about maybe reusing the pilot hole. Reaming
3 in hard crystalline rock, I don't know of any field cases,
4 but I would highly recommend against it. Using an
5 underreamer performance in hard rock is not good. You get a
6 very erratic borehole that wouldn't make for a better
7 solution, I would say.

8 If your borehole just has a very bad quality, I
9 would just plug it back and redrill it altogether.

10 HICKMAN: I would say also, in addition to the
11 difficulties of reaming, if you were to cement a hole and
12 just make a bigger hole, the breakouts would form all over
13 again. So you have the same stress concentration acting on
14 the hole. You get a new family of breakouts forming. So it
15 wouldn't solve the problem. You just make a bigger hole with
16 more breakouts.

17 And, also, laboratory experiments have shown that
18 when breakouts form, they're often backed by fractures. So
19 something flakes off into the well, and then behind it is
20 another piece that's waiting to flake off but hasn't yet.
21 And so there'd be some fractures behind there. It would be
22 very difficult for the cement to get into those fractures and
23 seal them. And that's in addition to the interconnected
24 microscopic crack that is created in the damage zone.

25 So those invisible fractures are sort of hiding

1 back there, and they would be hard to cement off as well.

2 VAN OORT: But there are also materials, right? You
3 could look at resins, for instance. You can look at resinous
4 materials and polymeric materials that could mix with mud and
5 solidify the mud, for instance. And that has been done. I
6 mean, we've used resin plugs and so on.

7 PUSCH: It's a problem, I think.

8 ZOBACK: Okay, Rod, and then Paul. Thanks. He asked
9 first.

10 EWING: Rod Ewing, Board. So earlier in the morning we
11 were presented with the U.S. program, which is a five-year
12 program. And I'm not a drilling expert at all, but just
13 listening, the recommendation is, we have to pay careful
14 attention to site characterization and site selection,
15 particularly thinking about the transferability of whatever
16 we learn to other sites. We need to consider developing new
17 drilling technologies, new bits and procedures. One
18 recommendation would be to look at new sealing materials that
19 would have to be developed and then, finally, the idea that
20 we need multiple wells for monitoring, particularly for the
21 very first test wells.

22 So if we did all of that in this program, would you
23 hazard a guess as to what the time period would be, the time
24 required to go through this process? Could it be done in
25 five years? I'm putting you on the spot, but--

1 HICKMAN: I think it would be very difficult to do it in
2 five years.

3 EWING: Would you hazard a guess as to--

4 HICKMAN: I don't know, really, but I just think it
5 needs to be done right. That's the most important thing
6 however long it takes. And I don't think you want to rush
7 this. I think you also need to make sure that whatever you
8 learn in the pilot project phase is of sufficient duration to
9 mean something for long-term disposal.

10 So if you're worried about hydrologic properties,
11 you need to do the long-term hydrologic tests. If you're
12 worried about seal performance, you need to look at seal
13 performance over long periods of time. And I worry about
14 taking data from a rushed project and extrapolating it over X
15 years where X could be a very large number. So I think the
16 most important thing is to do this right or not do it at all,
17 not whether it'll be five or ten years.

18 I don't know, I can't tell you an accurate number,
19 but I worry about time scaling, and I worry about space
20 scaling. If you're talking about a hundred thousand years, a
21 five-year project seems very short to me. If you're talking
22 about, you know, something like 30 years half-life, then
23 maybe. But I think we need to decide how long these things
24 need to maintain their integrity--are we talking 30 years,
25 are we talking ten thousand, a hundred thousand--and then

1 design the test project to adequately test the safety of that
2 system, however long it takes, before you put something down
3 a hole, because it's a one-way trip and we'll never get it
4 back.

5 EWING: Thank you.

6 CHUR: I would like to support that, and also there's a
7 comment to the cost. Of course, it has been several times
8 addressed how important the cost is, and, actually, it is.
9 However, I think for a project like this where we are talking
10 about a repository for hundreds, thousands of year, a million
11 of years, it can't be an issue in the up-front if it's 5 or
12 10 million or 20 million more costly than--that refers, of
13 course, what we said before.

14 You should really apply the proper drilling
15 equipment, automatic drilling equipment. You must do very
16 careful--the project must be done with the right personal
17 resources from the beginning. Most of the time it becomes too
18 personal. That's where failures come. So just spend a
19 couple bucks more.

20 VAN OORT: Let me add to that. So on the drilling
21 technology, I don't think new drilling technology needs to be
22 developed. I think on the seal technology some things need
23 to be developed, but on the drilling technology it's more
24 kind of configuring the right technology, the right existing
25 solutions, for this project. But I feel that that still

1 needs to be done.

2 And right now I would say, for that rather
3 aggressive timeline that you have right now, you're kind of
4 behind the curve and would encourage you to get the right
5 resources, the right people together, to address these
6 issues.

7 HICKMAN: And I wanted to add one thing, too. There was
8 a lot of nice work presented earlier about the risk analysis
9 for the engineered system. There needs to be a similar risk
10 analysis for the geologic system. We know how to do seismic
11 hazard assessments; we know how to do other kinds of
12 assessments. It would be pushing the envelope, but this is
13 no less serious a problem than the Yucca Mountain Project was
14 faced with several decades ago.

15 So the site characterization, the geologic site
16 characterization, the quantification of the geologic risks
17 have to be taken just as seriously as the quantification of
18 the engineering risks, emplacement, transfer, and all that.

19 So, again, I don't think it matters how long it
20 takes. If you can't do it correctly, don't do it at all.
21 That's my basic feeling.

22 ZOBACK: Okay. You want to make a response?

23 GRIFFITH: Andy Griffith, Department of Energy. It's
24 all good, you know, you can relax a little bit. We're not
25 rushing to dispose anything. This is just a field test.

1 We're going to learn from it. We're going to do it right.
2 No decisions are going to be rushed when we don't have
3 sufficient information.

4 HICKMAN: Okay, that's reassuring, but I do--the
5 concerns I expressed will guide how the pilot project--

6 GRIFFITH: And, you know, so far the dialogue has been
7 excellent, I think. We've gotten a lot of excellent
8 questions and good thoughts for consideration, and so I think
9 this is a really healthy dialogue. So I just want to set the
10 right expectation so we're not rushing into anything where
11 there are remaining questions.

12 HICKMAN: Okay, well, that's good to hear.

13 ZOBACK: Thank you.

14 Paul and then--come on up to the microphone, Paul.

15 TURINSKY: Paul Turinsky, Board. Are there different
16 drilling technologies independent of cost and speed that
17 would leave the adjacent rock in a better shape, or do they
18 all sort of do similar damage to the adjacent rock, to the
19 hole?

20 VAN OORT: I don't think there is a difference between
21 the different drilling technologies. Now, how you go about
22 delivering those is a big issue. I've warned against drill
23 string vibrations. You can drill a well without drill string
24 vibrations, right? That'll have a huge effect on the new
25 wellbore, taking good care to stabilize the wellbore while

1 you're drilling it, making sure that you have the right
2 wellbore support to dissipate the new wellbore hoop stresses,
3 making sure that borehole instability doesn't happen over
4 time. This was an issue at KTB, for instance. The KTB hole
5 was open for so long, right? Even though you can initially
6 stabilize the wellbore with water-base fluids, they can
7 invade, they can pressurize the new wellbore, your effective
8 stresses go down, and you get time-delayed failure.

9 All those things is what you need to consider when
10 you are creating a borehole and how you're managing, really,
11 the new wellbore stress state over time, the quality of
12 wellbore that you're going to end up with in the end.

13 In terms of drilling technologies, it's pretty much
14 similar for different types of bits, different types of
15 technologies.

16 CHUR: Just to add on that, to at least reduce if not
17 totally avoid the drill string vibration, as we have seen so
18 very impressive on the video, for example, at the KTB well we
19 drilled the whole well with downhole motors. And, of course,
20 that reduces the--and then you turn the drill string only,
21 whatever it was, 10, 15 RPM or so. And then you are rid of
22 these vibrations, which, actually, if you just drill it
23 simply rotary, have a damaging effect on the borehole wall--

24 VAN OORT: I have to warn you there. If you backream
25 with downhole motors, you shall see the worst kind of drill

1 string vibration that you ever seen, because you have an
2 unbalanced mass in the drill string. Some of the worst drill
3 string vibrations that U.S. operators are seeing in their
4 U.S. land drilling and actually destroys their motors is
5 backreaming with directional assemblies.

6 CHUR: So you make the point backreaming?

7 VAN OORT: Yeah.

8 CHUR: I was at the point drilling. But now we're
9 coming to a university discussion.

10 ZOBACK: Let's see if we can fit in a few more
11 questions.

12 PATRICK: Wes Patrick, Southwest Research Institute.
13 First I want to congratulate the panel. You were charged
14 with looking at how to drill, and I'm pleased that through
15 the questions we're hearing quite a bit about where to drill,
16 because I think that is certainly an earlier step in the
17 process.

18 Several of the comments that have been made, as
19 well as Mr. Griffith's commentary here about what--I guess
20 hinting at what the test is and is not, brings to mind
21 something that I think has to be very clearly in the minds of
22 those who are planning and executing the test; and I'd like
23 to see what your thoughts are on it.

24 And I see a tension here, because this is going to
25 be a consent-based process for the field test, and it's also

1 going to be a consent-based process for the real disposal.
2 And coupled on top of that is the promise that nothing
3 radioactive will ever go into that test facility.

4 That brings to mind what seems to me to be a pretty
5 important thing, and that is that the field test be conducted
6 under, as near as one can tell, conditions that are similar
7 to where one would expect or reasonably expect to be able to
8 put the deep borehole disposal site.

9 Now, granted, granites are complex rocks--or
10 complex--but I would encourage DOE to be thinking about
11 having a field test in an area where it is not unlikely--you
12 know, no promises, but it is not unlikely that they could
13 find a willing party, a willing organization, to accept an
14 actual disposal, because if the tests were to be done, say,
15 in a subduction zone somewhere in the southwest--you know,
16 off the coast of California--and we're really going to
17 anticipate the disposal would need to be done, you know, up
18 against the Canadian craton or something, conditions, stress,
19 uniformity of the materials and so forth could be quite
20 different.

21 I don't know whether you have any observations on
22 my observation or not.

23 HICKMAN: I think that's actually a very good
24 suggestion. And I know that the plan is not to put anything
25 radioactive in the first well. You wanted to know how well

1 you are able to predict the long-term performance of the
2 system with the best possible selection of a site, as you
3 pointed out, state-of-the-art characterization of the 3-D
4 volume. You could put either some kind of tracer downhole
5 with an appropriate heater to simulate canister performance
6 or actually some shortened half-life cesium/strontium or
7 something like that that if it leaked out, it wouldn't be as
8 bad as something with a longer half-life.

9 There are various ways to test this. I would
10 certainly feel more comfortable doing state-of-the-art
11 characterization, then carrying it to the next step either
12 with a tracer that is completely benign or something else to
13 look at the long-term performance of that site once you've
14 done the best you possibly could to select the representative
15 site that's likely to have transfer value to other sites and
16 do the best possible job you can of surface and downhole
17 crosshole characterization, then try something that looks
18 like a tracer test over long periods of time into your
19 monitoring wells and see how the system performs before you
20 go for much longer term or even start talking about longer-
21 term disposal. That would make me feel more comfortable.

22 ZOBACK: Okay, thank you.

23 We are seemingly out of questions, but also out of
24 time. Before I close the panel down, Steve, you've had an
25 opportunity just now to express some of your issues and

1 concerns. I'd like to give Claus and Eric 30 seconds or 45
2 seconds. You don't have to--if you feel you've said what you
3 want to say, is there any final words you'd like to have?

4 CHUR: First, I think from a drilling standpoint, the
5 program can be done. It's absolutely within the limits of
6 today's capabilities. I would highly recommend to make use
7 of the latest technology regardless if it could give
8 additional--will bring additional cost. However, at the end
9 of the day, you will save much more than you have spent up
10 front. Just a little hint. We can discuss that probably
11 later and separately.

12 I think your casing scheme is very conventional.
13 If you look at the KTB scheme, it was much lesser clearances,
14 only 15 millimeters, so you even could think of a reduced
15 casing scheme or have an additional reserve you build in,
16 which I think is a good thing.

17 The thing I cannot personally judge from my
18 experience is the excavation damage zone or near-bore damage
19 to the wellbore zone. If that is the major issue, then I
20 recommend to do additional work on how that can be handled.
21 As I understood, fluid is maybe not such a problem due to the
22 heavier gravity, but then there's still gas migration, just
23 to share that. I know that in Switzerland at the NAGRA they
24 have a lab in Grimsel, which specifically investigates these
25 sealing issues between casing, bentonite, and granite or

1 crystalline rock.

2 Then I would like to support one comment, Mary Lou,
3 from the morning you made. It's in reference to public
4 acceptance. I'm coming from a country which had a painful
5 discussion two years now on fracking with the results that
6 fracking for the time being and for the foreseeable future
7 will not be possible anymore in the country--it's almost
8 impossible--and that is primarily to the video, which was
9 recorded in your country and was not properly handled in our
10 country with a horrible effect.

11 So even if it's a clear statement from the
12 government that in these test boreholes there will be no
13 dispository from real nuclear waste, the fact doesn't matter.
14 I think it was shown in the morning that when I saw the org
15 chart from DOE, there was big box for procurement. I
16 recommend to have the same big box for public relations.

17 And last but not least, I hope the program will
18 fly, and I would like to enjoy to visit it sometime.

19 ZOBACK: Thank you.

20 Eric, final words?

21 VAN OORT: I'll take my 30 seconds as well. Just
22 briefly, I agree with Claus that there are no technical
23 hurdles to drilling the well. I want to say that how well
24 you drill, how clever you drill, will have a big effect on
25 the economics of the project. And that will change things by

1 tens of millions of dollars over the lifetime of the program,
2 if not hundreds of millions of dollars. And then the quality
3 of the construction, how much effort you put into
4 constructing a high-quality wellbore, will, of course, have
5 its consequences over the lifetime of the well.

6 ZOBACK: A good note to close on. And I want to--
7 everybody, let's thank the panelists again for an excellent
8 job.

9 Okay, we have a 12-minute break scheduled. See you
10 back here at 2:45.

11 (Whereupon, the meeting was adjourned for a brief
12 recess.)

13 CROFF: Can we be seated, please?

14 (Pause.)

15 Please take your seats so we can get started.

16 (Pause.)

17 Welcome back. I'm Allen Croff. I'm the Board
18 member that's going to moderate the second panel session on
19 emplacement modes for deep borehole disposal.

20 This panel is going to consider deep borehole
21 issues beginning with the receipt of waste for emplacement at
22 a deep borehole that is presumed to exist and be licensed for
23 waste disposal and ending with a deep borehole containing the
24 waste and awaiting closure but not having been closed. And
25 that topic, closure, is the subject of the next panel.

1 Questions to be considered in this panel are given
2 in the agenda. I'm not going to read them back to you. In
3 summary, we're going to address issues related to the
4 selection of the waste emplacement modes for deep borehole
5 disposal, normal and off-normal operational safety impacts to
6 workers and the public, and the design of the deep borehole
7 test facility to inform human health and technical risk
8 analyses into the future.

9 To be clear on this, to take off on what Dr. Gibb
10 said at lunch, in this session we're talking about operation
11 of a nuclear facility, not drilling or non-radioactive
12 operations and, in particular, sort of the nexus of drilling
13 and how do you handle highly radioactive material safely and
14 reliably.

15 With that, I'd like to briefly introduce our four
16 distinguished panelists.

17 First is Wes Patrick, who is Vice President of the
18 Geosciences and Engineering Division of the Southwest
19 Research Institute, where he directs a division engaged in
20 radioactive waste management, groundwater resource analysis,
21 energy exploration and development, planetary sciences,
22 environmental impact assessment, and site characterization--a
23 man for all seasons.

24 More directly relevant to our task here, before
25 joining the Institute, Wes conducted field test

1 investigations at the Waste Isolation Pilot Plant and the
2 spent fuel test at the Climax Mine site at what is now or was
3 then the Nevada Test Site, which we heard a little bit about
4 this morning. That was an engineering demonstration of
5 emplacing, storing, and retrieving spent fuel assemblies and
6 has some obvious relevance to what we're going to discuss
7 here in terms of emplacement.

8 Mark MacGlashan joined Schlumberger Oilfield
9 Services in 1979 and worked there as an engineer until 2015.
10 He is responsible for managing field operations engaged in
11 the acquisition of geophysical data collected from boreholes
12 drilled for oil, gas, and geothermal using instrument
13 packages deployed and retrieved with wireline and with drill
14 pipes. He has extensive experience in the use of various
15 types of logging instruments, including sealed radioactive
16 sources and the management of teams in the field to deploy
17 those resources.

18 Doug Minnema is a nuclear engineer and a health
19 physicist with 36 years of experience in DOE's nuclear
20 complex. He started his career with 16 years at Sandia,
21 where he conducted technical reviews of plans for monitoring
22 airborne radioactive aerosols at the Waste Isolation Pilot
23 Plant. He next became Senior Radiological Protection Advisor
24 at the National Nuclear Security Administration for 11 years;
25 and he is presently a staff member with the U.S. Defense

1 Nuclear Facilities Safety Board, where he performs oversight
2 of DOE's defense nuclear facilities in the area of radiation
3 protection, nuclear facility safety, criticality safety, and
4 safety culture.

5 Finally, Ernie Hardin has nearly 30 years
6 professional experience as a geoscientist and engineer for
7 four private companies and two U.S. nuclear laboratories. He
8 has been involved with underground research at the Stripa
9 granite mine in Sweden, Colorado School of Mines experimental
10 mine, the Lucky Friday Mine in Idaho, G-Tunnel on the Nevada
11 Test Site, Exploratory Studies Facility at Yucca Mountain,
12 and the Waste Isolation Pilot Plant.

13 Most recently he is the Test Package and
14 Emplacement Engineering Lead for the Deep Borehole Field
15 Test. We heard from him this morning, of course, rather
16 extensively. He is with us here to provide insights on this
17 recent work and the details of their study that are
18 essentially the subject of this panel's discussion.

19 At this point, Ernie having given his presentation
20 this morning, as with the previous panel, each of the other
21 three panelists are going to take about ten minutes to give
22 their perspectives on emplacement mode. And after the
23 presentations we'll again go to the questions and answers.

24 And, Wes Patrick, if you would be first, please.

25 PATRICK: Thank you, Allen, for that introduction. And

1 thank you all for coming and spending some time in exploring
2 this very important topic that DOE and the rest of us have
3 before us.

4 Just to frame my comments today, I am not going to
5 address anything related to policy aspects. The assumption
6 and the comments that I'll be making is that decision has
7 been made, and the Department of Energy has been instructed
8 or made the decision to move forward with conducting a field
9 test to examine aspects of emplacement and other things that
10 will be spoken to by other panelists here today.

11 So, with that in mind, I have framed my
12 presentation along three lines. First, I want to very
13 quickly give you some background, some lessons learned from
14 the Spent Fuel Test-Climax. That really is the stage-setter,
15 both historically for me, and I was pleased to see that
16 Ernest Hardin and his colleagues have at least looked back at
17 that experiment to see what could be learned from it.

18 I want to focus then on some specific aspects, some
19 specific observations, about the Deep Borehole Field Test
20 plan and then just wrap up with a couple of summary comments.

21 We learned a lot at the Spent Fuel Test-Climax, and
22 I've identified several of the items here that are important
23 to that. I'll touch on them very briefly just now, because I
24 want to dig into those a little more deeply in my specific
25 comments about what DOE is currently planning.

1 It's critically important that the plan, the
2 design, and the execution of the test be consistent both with
3 whatever the current legislative statutory constraints and
4 regulations are or what one could reasonably anticipate to be
5 the case when the actual deployment of the deep borehole
6 disposal mode would be implemented.

7 The third bullet there ties into those. It's very
8 easy for engineers to "assume away" things. It's harder to
9 assume away them in technical areas, but it is much easier,
10 I've found in experience, to assume away things that deal
11 with the statutory, the regulatory, aspects. So that's one
12 of the lessons that we learned very quickly at Climax and
13 adhered to trying to understand where those assumptions might
14 creep into and avoid doing so.

15 Very important to integrate fully and hold in an
16 equal standing the engineering and science objectives. All
17 too easy to subordinate one to the other and to the detriment
18 of the program and what is ultimately able to be learned, to
19 be mined out--no pun intended--from the experimental
20 activities.

21 It's important, we learned, to explicitly account
22 for environmental, safety, and quality aspects that could
23 affect the eventual implementation, even things like
24 radiological safety that are not important to a field test
25 that doesn't involve nuclear materials, radiological

1 materials. There are things that can be done, as I'll speak
2 to later, that can be used to simulate those important
3 aspects.

4 We learned that it's very important to give
5 preference to engineered controls rather than to
6 administrative controls. Human factors are a ubiquitous
7 problem in just about any operation one can think of.

8 And the last point that we learned was to employ
9 management principles that allow for flexibility. Call them
10 what you want. Some people like the term "adaptive
11 management". But it's important that those flexibilities be
12 present throughout the design, construction, and operations
13 process.

14 Let's take some of those lessons learned and move
15 them over into the Deep Borehole Field Test and, by
16 implication, what can be learned there that can be applied to
17 actual deep borehole disposal.

18 Again, the statutory and regulatory requirements,
19 really need to think through those as fully as possible.
20 Right now the Nuclear Waste Policy Act calls for
21 retrievability, that the option be preserved to do that.
22 It's important, in my view, that DOE think through that and
23 decide whether that's an important part of this. Certainly
24 from everything we know and have heard so far, the Deep
25 Borehole Field Test is going to actually retrieve the

1 simulated packages, so it will be done. But it's important
2 to do it under conditions that are relevant to what would be
3 anticipated to be done under the deep borehole disposal plan.

4 I did not identify any areas where statutory and
5 regulatory framing would differentiate between the two
6 techniques that DOE has considered so far, the drill string
7 emplacement and the wireline emplacement. So the analysis
8 results, if only those two are considered, would not be
9 impacted. So nothing, really, that I would recommend be done
10 there.

11 The field test, as I mentioned earlier, really
12 needs to be framed within the context of what is reasonably
13 anticipated. Why do I say that? It comes down to
14 representativeness of what is done during that field test,
15 and that representativeness, in turn, drives the
16 transferability of the results from the test conditions to
17 any deep borehole disposal that might be adopted as a
18 national policy.

19 The integration and completeness of the objectives
20 is a very important aspect as well. Operational realism we
21 found to be critically important at the Spent Fuel Test. I
22 believe it is even more so here as we get closer and closer
23 to deciding as a nation of how to dispose of at least some of
24 the types of waste that are out there.

25 And that drives me to make the second comment in

1 that phrase, is that all possible elements or reasonably
2 possible elements of the deep borehole disposal concept need
3 to be incorporated in the field test. As I look through the
4 current plan, many things are still TBD. And, granted, Mr.
5 Hardin, you know, it may be too early in the program, but I
6 want to highlight that and make sure that that's on the
7 record.

8 The engineering objectives need to be on par with
9 science. At Climax engineering drove science, and we had to
10 fight tooth and nail to get the right science into that,
11 right, as far as we could take it at that time. Here I see a
12 couple of places in the test plan where it says nothing will
13 be done on the engineering side that'll compromise the
14 science. That swings the pendulum in the other direction. I
15 would call for a balance there, not a subordination of one
16 below the other.

17 I think there are some interesting things that are
18 said in the test plan about emplacement fluids, including
19 non-mud fluids. It gets onto some of the issues that were
20 raised in the previous panel. Those are some important
21 aspects to speak to. The hydrology, the geochemistry,
22 sealing, long-term performance, all of those come into play
23 when you consider the role of mud. Same is true of the
24 materials that are used to cement in the upper sections of
25 the controls that are in place for the borehole.

1 There are some things that can be done, I think, to
2 simulate the presence of radiological materials. As a bare
3 minimum, time-and-motion studies can be done there from which
4 one can calculate. I think the last one might also want to
5 give some thought to whether there are ways that the
6 radiation field can be simulated. Those of you who are
7 physicists out here, you can think of RF techniques, EM
8 techniques, things that would allow you to get a simulated
9 effect, detect a simulated effect, without exposing people to
10 ionizing radiation.

11 Some comments on the completeness of the analyses
12 as they currently stand, I think, are warranted.
13 Consideration, I think, should be given or could be given to
14 a way of taking advantage of our ability to directionally
15 drill--and I'll let some of the drilling experts speak to
16 that a little bit further--but some of the early concepts in
17 deep borehole disposal--actually, at a single borehole--that
18 would then flare out to create four or five or six
19 emplacements there. There may be advantages to using that
20 kind of a technique here. It's worth taking a look at.

21 I notice also in looking at the test plan that the
22 analyses are not only consistent between the two techniques
23 that were being evaluated, and I think they're important to
24 consider as we think about how transferable might these field
25 test results be over into an actual disposal mode. I mention

1 just a few here that came to my eye as I was looking through
2 things. Maintenance--you may not need to do maintenance in
3 the period involved in this particular study, but to think
4 through that, to plan through that, to look at where the
5 risks are associated with the timing of maintenance.
6 Condition-based maintenance consideration, things of that
7 nature, status monitoring of the various aspects of the
8 emplacement equipment and so forth, status of the emplacement
9 fluid, it seemed to be a very important thing in the drill
10 string operation. Didn't really pick up on much being
11 thought about or talked about anyway in the wireline
12 emplacement.

13 So a few of those things. And that's not intended
14 to be a comprehensive list, but just some things that popped
15 out to me as I was looking at the analyses that have been
16 done to date.

17 Criticality seemed to have been taken off the
18 table. It might very well be something worth considering.
19 It could be a discriminating factor between the two
20 emplacement modes. Whether it's a discriminating factor or
21 not, it's one that you will eventually need to tackle as you
22 look at deep borehole disposal implementation.

23 I did identify some additional engineering or
24 operational considerations that DOE and Sandia may want to
25 consider in their development contractor. A number of things

1 are listed for further analysis. These analyses really need
2 to be completed.

3 There are some things, for instance, that we found
4 at Climax that were very important: the gate closure
5 mechanisms, things that would prevent gate closure under
6 load--we saw some of that being simulated in the one video
7 this morning--the need for wireline inspections, again,
8 simulating these sorts of things during the actual field
9 test. Even though they may not be important there, because
10 the duration, the number of trips, etc., are very, very low,
11 they can help in understanding where problems can arise
12 during operation and how controls can be put in place to
13 prevent those kinds of problems or minimize the probability
14 of them occurring.

15 Based on the high failure probabilities, it may be
16 useful, may be important, to include some of those safety
17 interlocks that you have implicitly included in the deep
18 borehole disposal in the field test as well. The other part
19 of risk, the consequence part of the risk computation, is not
20 going to be very significant for the field test; but, again,
21 it would make the simulation, the field test, much more
22 realistic and consequently may be worth doing.

23 I think it's important along those same lines to
24 include in the field test appropriate control systems that
25 will be important in the deep borehole disposal should it be

1 implemented. There are several listed in the tables and the
2 analyses as not being needed for the Deep Borehole Field
3 Test; but, again, my view from the experience at Climax and
4 elsewhere is that even if they're not needed on the test,
5 incorporation of them in that test is very valuable if they
6 are needed in the actual implementation.

7 The emplacement fluid, very interesting concept
8 there in terms of balancing out the load, slowing the descent
9 rate under normal conditions, but also that would come into
10 play if a cable were to fail or a drill string were to fail.
11 Given the high probability of drop events, I wonder whether
12 some sort of a gravity braking system on the emplacement
13 equipment might also be important. I believe the drill
14 strings, the weights there are so large that that would not
15 be implementable, but wireline single-package emplacements,
16 that should be a readily achievable engineering
17 implementation there. May not be necessary. May not
18 significantly decrease the risk. But that's one that we put
19 on at Climax. Of course, there lowering through air;
20 considerably different situation than what is being proposed
21 here.

22 Wrap up then just with a few brief concluding
23 remarks. My overall assessment, looking through the
24 information that was available to us, which certainly is not
25 all of it, is that the specifications document does lay out a

1 very sound concept. The preliminary design analyses I found
2 to be very thorough with respect to the emplacement mode
3 considerations and the treatment of risk uncertainty and even
4 taking it a step further into some rather detailed
5 sensitivity analyses. I commend those who are working on the
6 project for those things.

7 My overall assessment is that the current state of
8 practice and the current state of engineering are included
9 within the proposed approach, and a number of the lessons
10 learned from the Spent Fuel Test-Climax demonstration project
11 have also been incorporated.

12 And, finally, the specific suggestions I have made,
13 I would just turn to DOE and their contractors and encourage
14 them to take a look at those, give them due consideration as
15 they move forward with the program.

16 That concludes my remarks.

17 CROFF: Thank you.

18 MACGLASHAN: Hi, everyone. My name is Mark MacGlashan.
19 I was an engineer for Schlumberger for about 36 years, and I
20 was in the wireline business, in the wireline segment, that
21 is. So our business was usually running things into the well
22 on wireline, always wanting to get them back out as opposed
23 to leaving them in there. But, still, there's a lot of
24 technology that transfers over, so I have a few highlights to
25 share with my presentation that would be of interest for

1 planning for operational purposes.

2 First of all, of the four emplacement mode options,
3 the first two that are under the most consideration are drill
4 pipe emplacement and wireline or logging cable emplacement.
5 There are two others that have been--one of them that has
6 been discussed, gravity or free-fall emplacement, and one
7 that has not been discussed yet, and that is what I've termed
8 a conveyance liner. That would consist of an inner
9 concentric casing that is loaded with waste packages at the
10 surface and then conveyed into the emplacement zone on drill
11 pipe.

12 So back to the drill pipe emplacement option, there
13 are a number of advantages that drill pipe offers. Number
14 one is it's very strong. It's on the order of several
15 hundred thousand pounds, so with a lifting capacity that
16 gives you the--makes it possible to convey multiple waste
17 packages for efficiency. And since we would be conveying
18 multiple waste packages, we would be limiting the number of
19 descents; so with the number of descents, that makes your
20 chance of--reduces your chance of accidents.

21 The advantage, the greater strength of the drill
22 pipe also is available in the event that the drill pipe or
23 waste packages become stuck in the borehole, something that's
24 a very major possibility. Another advantage is the ability
25 to circulate through the drill pipe. This is a commonly-used

1 technique to free drill pipe and drilling assemblies if they
2 become stuck in the well. Now, this circulation with the
3 current plan, they would be going to the end of the drill
4 pipe, and they would not be able to go past the waste
5 packages.

6 So some of the disadvantages or drawbacks to the
7 drill pipe emplacement mode. So the fact that the trip with
8 the drill pipe in a well or a borehole of this depth with a
9 drilling rig could be expected to take as much as 24 hours,
10 so to make the most of the efficient use of the drilling rig,
11 you would need to convey multiple waste packages. So that's
12 one disadvantage. It's also a disadvantage in that you would
13 need also complex pipe handling machinery to assemble and
14 hold in place waste packages at the surface.

15 So one other disadvantage or drawback that might be
16 encountered is, this pipe handling machinery that's proposed,
17 it would be a very complex system. It would have to be
18 capable of supporting the waste packages, also screwing them
19 together or fastening them together. So that could be--with
20 the waste packages in the pipe handling machinery for an
21 extended period of time, that could produce some unforeseen
22 effects, such as deterioration of O-rings and hydraulic hoses
23 and other organic materials such as electrical insulation and
24 things like that.

25 Some more disadvantages. This will be a complex

1 operation, so there will be more on-site personnel needed.
2 Also, with this arrangement there will be no option to
3 circulate mud or borehole fluid past the waste packages. So
4 with our current, we could have a potential of about 800 feet
5 of waste packages with no way to circulate past them. So if
6 they were to become lodged in the borehole among debris or
7 something, circulation would not be available to assist with
8 that.

9 Another possibility or potential problem is a
10 failure during assembly of the waste packages in this pipe
11 handling machinery. There is a potential or a possibility
12 that it could leave a connection between two waste packages
13 partially assembled or possibly the pipe handling machinery
14 may fail itself. If this were to occur, it could be a
15 situation that would be difficult to remedy, because you
16 would not be able to approach the machinery because of the
17 presence of the waste packages. And with a partially
18 connected connection, they might not be safe to move. So
19 with this scenario, we could have some waste packages kind of
20 like in place and not safe to move.

21 Another disadvantage to this--two more
22 disadvantages to the drill pipe emplacement. The waste
23 packages, of course, may be exposed to impact and crushing
24 forces from the heavy weight of the drill pipe. That's
25 something we've been discussing quite a bit.

1 Another potential drawback as far as testing, the
2 pipe handling machinery is a very complex system. It may be
3 difficult to make a scaled-down working model. Because of
4 its complexity, it may have to be--for testing have a full-
5 scale working model.

6 Our next emplacement mode is wireline. So due to
7 the strength limits of the wireline--it's not nearly as
8 strong as drill pipe--it would be planned to convey one
9 package at a time. So in a way that's an advantage, because
10 you would not need two other things; we would not need to
11 have the pipe handling machinery, and we would have a simpler
12 design for the waste packages themselves since they would
13 have no need for connections between each waste package.

14 Another advantage of this wireline, the speed of
15 each descent or emplacement would be about six hours, much
16 faster than wireline. The other advantage, because wireline
17 has potential to run instruments, you can convey electrical
18 logging instruments along with the waste package, so this
19 could be a big advantage for monitoring to the surface. The
20 personnel could monitor the depth condition, temperature,
21 radiation level of the waste package.

22 So one more advantage with the wireline: The waste
23 package is unlikely to be damaged, because the wireline and
24 associated equipment is much, much lighter than drill pipe.
25 Also, again, since the waste packages with wireline would not

1 need to be designed with end-to-end connections, they could
2 incorporate impact-absorbing modules.

3 Some disadvantages associated with the wireline:
4 Due to the number of descents needed to complete the
5 emplacement project, that's a large number of descents, about
6 400. So the possibility of an exposure to getting a waste
7 package stuck in the borehole or some other undesired
8 incident like an accident is quite high since they have to
9 be--there's a lot of operations involved with 400 descents.

10 Another disadvantage or drawback: A waste package
11 stuck in casing, if the decision is made to recover it,
12 usually that's done with drill pipe. So here we would have
13 the drill pipe introduced into the wireline operation, and
14 then you would be bringing in some of the same hazards
15 associated with the drill pipe, which sort of introduces
16 extra hazard with the wireline.

17 Another disadvantage with wireline is a failure of
18 the wireline instrument assembly or the cable or the release
19 mechanism that's used to release the waste package in the
20 emplacement zone. If they were to fail during the
21 emplacement, the decision would have to be made to either
22 just leave the wireline and the waste package in the borehole
23 or bring it back to surface to make repairs. So that would
24 bring in a new set of hazards in bringing a waste package
25 back to the surface.

1 So the waste packages are designed to resist
2 external pressures, but there's always a chance--as a
3 pressure vessel, there is a chance that these waste packages
4 could develop a leak at depth. And if the pressure were to
5 equalize with the external pressure, you could end up
6 bringing the waste package back to surface with high
7 pressures inside. And with the current design, there is not
8 a good way to know the conditions on the inside of the waste
9 package.

10 Another item, the last item for the wirelines--so
11 the weight of the waste package, which the buoyant weight is
12 going to be close to 4,000 pounds in the wireline at this
13 depth, would be close to the operational tensile limits of
14 most of the wirelines in use now.

15 So our gravity or free-fall emplacement advantages,
16 as was mentioned, this is really very, very simple. It's the
17 least complex by far. So, because of its simplicity, there
18 would be less personnel needed. And because of not having
19 the combined operations with drill pipe or wireline, it may
20 have less chance of becoming stuck in the borehole, because
21 there's less chance of introducing debris in the borehole
22 with other operations.

23 Some disadvantages: The free-fall method may need
24 to have a redesigned waste package or a redesigned borehole
25 trajectory to limit descent speed, and it may not be

1 acceptable due to lack of control and monitoring. Once it's
2 released, there would not be a good way to monitor its
3 descent.

4 The conveyance liner, this technique would have
5 quite a few advantages, first of all, the ability to convey
6 multiple waste packages at one time to the emplacement zone
7 without having to physically connect them, because they would
8 be stacked inside this inner casing liner.

9 So another advantage is, along-the-pipe movement of
10 each waste package as it's placed would be into the
11 conveyance liner, and then that would be only 10 percent of
12 the depth of the well, so there's less chance of an
13 individual waste package becoming stuck in the borehole.

14 One more advantage, ability to circulate borehole
15 fluid down into the liner past the waste packages to clear
16 debris or help free the liner if it were to become stuck in
17 the hole.

18 Another advantage, the liner would serve to protect
19 the waste packages during the emplacement, since they would
20 be resting inside the liner, and they would be protected from
21 impact from the drill pipe.

22 So another advantage is, just as a general remark,
23 the design and use of casing liners is a really well-
24 developed technology and very commonly used. So there is
25 many designs available, and personnel in the oil technology

1 business usually are very familiar with them.

2 One more advantage: It's been mentioned that
3 supporting bridge plugs and cementing would be needed to
4 provide support between groups of waste packages. And with
5 this conveyance liner, each liner is suspended separately
6 from the outer casing, so there would not be a need for those
7 unless they wanted to do hydraulic isolation between these
8 groups.

9 Some disadvantages, there's one principal one.
10 Since the conveyance liner requires an outer casing string
11 for the liner hanger to engage, it might require a major
12 redesign of the disposal borehole; and it's not part of the
13 current planning.

14 So a few other items that could influence the well
15 design and emplacement modes. Directional drilling. A
16 directionally drilled borehole could offer quite a few
17 advantages. First of all, it could simply limit impacts
18 during accidents if something was dropped. Another thing is,
19 the angle build rate can be very well controlled so that the
20 angle build rate--that's another way of describing the
21 curvature of the borehole--wouldn't stop or impede the
22 passage of the waste packages.

23 Another large advantage of a directionally drilled
24 borehole is that if the angle from vertical is high enough,
25 then the axial load on the waste packages could be reduced to

1 the point where, again, it would not require bridge plugs and
2 cementing.

3 And, just as an aside, as a general rule, the angle
4 from vertical, angle of repose, for commonly-used materials
5 in drilling is about 72 degrees.

6 Another little item of technology, the distributed
7 temperature sensor systems, or DTS, these are fiber optic
8 cable systems that, when they're installed, they're installed
9 during the casing installation along the outside of the
10 casing. They provide real-time temperature monitoring about
11 every three feet from the surface along the casing. They
12 could have an application for monitoring the descent velocity
13 or emplacement of waste packages.

14 In general, the design of waste packages, they will
15 be exposed to very high temperatures in the emplacement zone.
16 At 16,000 feet they could see 350 degrees Fahrenheit. And
17 depending on the borehole fluid, if it's just water, if it's
18 a vertical well, it's going to be about 7000 psi.

19 So a failed or damaged waste package could be very
20 hazardous if it's returned to surface, as I said on another
21 slide. It could contain high pressures. In addition to
22 being a waste package, it's also a pressure vessel. So the
23 design of these waste packages should recognize that there
24 may need to be a way to identify pressure trapped inside them
25 or a safe way to release the trapped pressure.

1 So, in summary, the gravity deployment or free-fall
2 is least hazardous in all respects, but it's probably not
3 acceptable due to a lack of control and monitoring.

4 A conveyance liner eliminates a lot of drawbacks
5 associated with both wireline and drill pipe, but it's not a
6 part of the current planning, and it may require a redesign
7 of the borehole.

8 The drill pipe emplacement mode is most likely the
9 next most hazardous of these three due to the hazard posed by
10 the weight of the drill pipe possibly impacting the waste
11 packages in the event of an accident; also the associated
12 hazards with the pipe assembly or pipe handling machine or
13 its surface.

14 Our last emplacement, the wireline, is probably the
15 most hazardous due to the large number of descents needed or
16 operations needed to emplace 400 waste packages at 16,000
17 feet with a wireline and also with the addition of possible
18 fishing operations that would involve drill pipe.

19 That concludes my presentation.

20 MINNEMA: Thank you and good afternoon. I'm Doug
21 Minnema. I do need to note first my disclaimer. As a
22 federal employee who is not a political appointee for my
23 agency, I have to note that these are my opinions, not my
24 agency's. The second reason I want to point this out is for
25 my DOE friends. They need to know that this is not implying

1 that the Defense Board is going to oversee this project. I
2 am an expert and was asked to talk about a particular area,
3 so that's why I'm here.

4 I do want to thank Allen Croff and the Board for
5 inviting me. I appreciate the opportunity to speak on this
6 area. It is a little different of an area for me, although I
7 have the technical background for this, but what I've been
8 doing lately is more soft science. So I look forward to it.

9 I want to touch on four areas real quick. There
10 are some concerns I have about the operational aspects. I am
11 a nuclear safety guy, so I look at it as a nuclear facility
12 from day one. I was also asked to talk a little bit about
13 organizational culture and the impact on safety. That is one
14 of my other areas of expertise, and so I want to spend a
15 couple minutes talking about that, too, and how it may have
16 implications in this project.

17 You've heard it before; I'm going to say it again.
18 Understanding the requirements within which you have to do
19 this project is vitally important. If you ask me what kind
20 of data you need to collect for assessing human health and
21 safety, I will tell you, "Tell me first what requirements you
22 have to meet." It's not that it can't be done, but your data
23 needs will vary significantly based on what the requirements
24 are.

25 First I want to touch on radiation safety during

1 routine operations. And where I'm looking at here mostly is
2 before the material--from the time the material comes on-site
3 until it really goes into the hole and is outside of the
4 range of the operators. Certainly it is important after it
5 goes into the hole, if it gets crushed and has to be brought
6 out, that is a problem. But, to me, the biggest risk
7 operationally to the workers involved and, in fact, to the
8 public may be during the time that that material is being
9 handled, shipped on-site, taken out of the cask, put into its
10 fixture or however it will be moved down into the hole.
11 That's where you have the opportunity to have significant
12 exposure levels to the workers.

13 And I know this is a group from academia and
14 engineers, so I'm going to speak a little heresy. It's a
15 great academic exercise to go through and do all the
16 shielding calculations to do this, but don't rely on
17 engineering and calculations alone.

18 DOE has a lot of experience handling very hot
19 packages. Some of that experience is good; some of it is
20 bad. But you need to go out and make sure that that
21 experience has been incorporated. It comes down sometimes to
22 simply the types of fixtures that you have on the shielded
23 cask, for opening or closing the lids, a variety of things
24 that come into play that only the person that has done it
25 before can tell you whether or not it will work that way.

1 Now, going deeper into nuclear safety beyond just
2 the radiological risks, I would actually probably slightly
3 disagree with some of the previous speakers. The Deep
4 Borehole Field Test is one thing, but if you are going to do
5 this for real, you need to think of it as a nuclear facility
6 from day one. It is not a drilling project converting into a
7 nuclear facility. It is a nuclear facility from day one.
8 Safety has to be designed in it from the beginning.

9 There are basic elements of nuclear safety that we
10 always think about. One is the quality of the knowledge that
11 you know about the material you're working with. In this
12 case it's waste. You don't know exactly what the process
13 history is of the material or what its form is. You know
14 that the packages that you are using, even the cesium
15 packages, may not have good integrity, so you can't rely on
16 them. So you need to independently develop some level of
17 confidence in the integrity of the packaging or the outer
18 packaging you're going to use.

19 You want to be sure that your safety controls are
20 always effective. Another individual commented--I think it
21 was Wes talked about not relying on administrative controls.
22 He is absolutely right. The administrative controls are
23 probably the weakest part of your whole control set. You
24 have to have some, but you don't want to rely on them as a
25 primary safety function.

1 And, lastly, especially in a case like this, I did
2 some simple calculations. If I take eight of the cesium
3 capsules and put them in one waste package, I've got 5,000 or
4 thereabout rads per hour on the outside of that package. It
5 is not an insignificant dose, though. That means that
6 everything I do around that package either has to be--it
7 either has to be completely shielded, or it has to be
8 reliable such that all the systems are completely fault-
9 tolerant. So if something fails, I don't want to send in a
10 guy to fix it. I want to be able to recover gracefully. And
11 that has to be designed in and thought through from the
12 beginning, so that is something that the field test aspect is
13 very important to think about.

14 Another thing that comes into the safety-related
15 systems, we have a couple concepts in nuclear facilities. We
16 talked about material at risk, and we talked about material
17 in process. In this case, the material at risk would be the
18 total amount of material you want to put down in the hole.
19 That's decided by your design, your features.

20 The material in process in this case, think of it
21 as the material you're actually handling at any one time.
22 How many of those waste packages am I trying to manipulate at
23 one time? How many do I have on-site? Am I trying to form a
24 drill string of 40 or 50 packages? That material is in
25 process. It's in a situation where it presents a possible

1 hazard to the workers. And so you really want to try and
2 minimize that.

3 Now, sometimes you end up in this conflict between,
4 if I only handle one package at a time, I have more wireline
5 operations, but if I do a drill string, I have more material
6 that can get released if I drop it. You have to balance
7 these things. But you really want to think about it in terms
8 of minimizing the possibility of an exposure to an
9 individual. And probabilities don't always get you there,
10 because if it happens once, you're going to fix it so it's
11 probably not going to--hopefully it's not going to happen a
12 second time. But if you think about in probabilistic terms,
13 you're assuming that it's going to happen once every 50
14 times. There are differences there between a small-
15 consequence accident and a large-consequence accident.

16 The one thing I want to do here real quick, the
17 risk profiles that you are working with through this
18 operation are going to shift throughout the operation.
19 You're going to be working with different kind of materials,
20 different kind of dose rates. Above ground is going to be
21 different than below ground.

22 In the nuclear business we have a tendency to try
23 and envelope things, bounding scenarios. You really don't
24 want to do that here. You want to take out as small chunks
25 as possible and analyze each of those chunks separately,

1 because your risk is significant, especially for those
2 workers on-site. Your risk is significant, and it shifts
3 constantly. And if that package is carrying TRU waste or
4 high-level waste or calcine waste, which is very easily
5 dispersible versus a cesium capsule, your risk is completely
6 different. You don't want to look at it generically and say,
7 well, a waste package is a waste package is a waste package.

8 On culture I want to look real quick from two
9 aspects of it. There is the organizational culture of the
10 people on the site and their management in that organization.
11 And, in blue, I would ask you the simple question: Would you
12 expect a nuclear operator to operate a drill rig? And if the
13 answer is no, then you probably shouldn't expect a drill rig
14 operator to operate a nuclear facility. You want to keep the
15 functions separate and make sure that you have the right
16 people doing the right things.

17 Drill rig operators are very safe doing what they
18 do. Nuclear facility operators are very safe doing what they
19 do. It's when the mindset gets to the point that, well, this
20 is only a--we're just putting waste into a borehole, you
21 start relaxing, you start becoming overconfident, you start
22 saying, well, an operator can be an operator, I don't care if
23 he's a mining background or a nuclear operator. It affects
24 the way things get done, and it affects the decision making.
25 You need to be very careful about maintaining those two

1 separate.

2 The other way I look at it--and this is not a
3 criticism of DOE; don't assume that. DOE is a very dynamic
4 organization. As we all know, their priorities shift
5 regularly; their budget shifts regularly; their leadership
6 shifts regularly. That creates real stress on an
7 organization when you are trying to do a long-term operation.
8 If you try and do a 10- or 20-year waste disposal operation--
9 for example, WIPP--it's tremendous stress on the culture of
10 the organization. The priorities shift; the people have to
11 shift according to those priorities. In an operation like
12 this when you get to real-time, you really have to take that
13 into account and think about how that will play out and how
14 can I best isolate this operation from the constant change
15 that occurs at the other levels within the organization.

16 Now, I want to leave you with this. I know we are
17 not flying shuttles, but that's okay, because this--I think
18 this sentence captured both--I'm sorry, two sentences--
19 captured both the Columbia accident, the Challenger accident.
20 It also captures a lot of my experience over my 36 years with
21 DOE. "Each decision, taken by itself, seemed
22 inconsequential, but in the end they accumulated together."

23 You see that I've done multiple accident
24 investigations. I've done multiple assessments. And where
25 you see accidents occur in this business, it's where you have

1 multiple breakdowns; and where you have multiple breakdowns,
2 it's due to individual decisions that accumulated that were
3 not recognized--where the accumulated risk was not recognized
4 in the organization.

5 So I want to leave you with that. Each decision
6 you make on this field test may have significance. You may
7 not know what that significance is now, but it will
8 accumulate. So you need to pay attention to everything until
9 you feel you have an understanding of what's important.

10 And that's it. Thank you.

11 CROFF: I'd like to thank all the speakers. We're going
12 on to questions and answers. I'd like to approach this by
13 first offering the current panel a chance to question or
14 comment or offer any thoughts on what they've heard during
15 the last three presentations and maybe a little bit bringing
16 into what you heard from Ernie this morning, too.

17 And while you're doing that, other panel members,
18 if you are interested and you have a comment or a question,
19 please approach the microphone and queue up, and we'll get to
20 you very shortly here.

21 First, the sitting panel. Any discussion comments?

22 HARDIN: I can make a couple.

23 CROFF: Okay, go ahead.

24 HARDIN: So Hardin, Sandia. So, Wes, I don't think
25 criticality will be a problem as long as we are not in the

1 business of disposing of spent fuel. I don't see any of the
2 other waste forms being a problem.

3 Mark, it would be good to talk to you about how to
4 prevent leaking packages from spewing their contents when
5 they get to the surface. I'm sure that problem comes up
6 frequently in the well logging business.

7 MACGLASHAN: Not frequently, but it's a possibility.

8 HARDIN: It has happened, yeah.

9 And I think, Doug, I would agree that radiological
10 worker safety could be a discriminate. I think that might be
11 a direction that we could look into.

12 MINNEMA: I agree.

13 HARDIN: In off-normal events.

14 MINNEMA: Actually, I would say in both normal and off-
15 normal events. We tend to assume that the nuclear industry
16 has a broad range of experience; and, actually, that broad
17 range of experience in in very specific areas. And so when
18 you take us outside of the facility and put us into a field
19 where we are moving material outside of the normal envelope
20 that we operate within, it still is different. And so it's
21 something that you have to think about every day.

22 CROFF: Wes.

23 PATRICK: Wes Patrick, Southwest Research Institute. I
24 would add to Doug's comment. There were at least two
25 occasions, one in the shielded high bay area loading packages

1 and one as we were doing the interface, actually getting the
2 spent fuel ready to be lowered underground, where the
3 interface between people who were used to doing, not
4 necessarily non-nuclear, but nuclear weapons things where
5 high-radiation fields were not an issue, came very strongly
6 into play. And, fortunately, we had all the backup systems
7 where we detected in one case a source that was exposed
8 before people got there. But very important.

9 CROFF: Ernie.

10 HARDIN: A question for Wes. Hardin, Sandia. The
11 gravity break, was that ever tested?

12 PATRICK: Patrick, SWRI. Yes. We had a dummy canister
13 that was filled with steel shot, and we did the full test in
14 the lined borehole where the packages would be lowered. We
15 never had an accident condition develop where it tripped, but
16 we did do the full test.

17 CROFF: I'm not seeing any of the other panelists in the
18 first few rows. Is there anybody on the Board would like to
19 ask a question?

20 ZOBACK: Mary Lou Zoback, Board. Just a quick question.
21 In Fergus Gibb's lunchtime talk he suggested an alternative
22 mode of emplacement, coiled tubing. And, Mike MacGlashan--

23 MACGLASHEN: Mark.

24 ZOBACK: Mark, yeah, you suggested an alternative. So
25 we heard DOE in the morning present two alternatives, and

1 we've since heard two better alternatives. So should the
2 choice of emplacement modes be expanded to explore the better
3 alternatives?

4 (Pause.)

5 Well, let's hear what these guys have to say.

6 Are you familiar with the coiled--

7 MACGLASHAN: Yes, it's definitely a valid suggestion.
8 So the coiled tubing is certainly a valid suggestion--
9 MacGlashan, Panel--but first of all, we might get into the
10 same situation with drill pipe where it's not as effective to
11 run it singly. Coiled tubing is very expensive, and to use
12 it is quite expensive. But it's definitely a valid option.

13 ZOBACK: Do you want to respond?

14 HARDIN: So Hardin, Sandia. Yeah, we certainly had that
15 conversation. I've never really sat down and looked at the
16 conveyance casing idea, but the coiled tubing--I mean, I
17 think Professor Gibb hinted at the problem with it. It's
18 only good for so many trips. And so--

19 ZOBACK: It's only money.

20 HARDIN: So the philosophy of design here was, do we
21 have this complex machinery subgrade to assemble packages or
22 not? And so with coiled tubing it probably doesn't make
23 sense to do it unless you do because of the limited lifetime
24 of the tubing.

25 PATRICK: Patrick, Panel. Just further to that, I think

1 we need to recognize the obvious, that there is a reason why
2 it has a limited lifetime, that it's going through a
3 fatiguing process. That introduces a risk that DOE would
4 need to understand and elucidate very, very carefully.

5 CROFF: Fergus.

6 GIBB: Fergus Gibb, Sheffield University. Just a
7 comment on the coiled tubing. We've done some cost
8 calculations for a two-and-a-half-inch coiled tube. It would
9 make between a hundred and two hundred runs, and it works out
10 between one and two thousand dollars a roundtrip. And he's
11 right, there is a fatigue issue with the coil going over a
12 gooseneck every run. But you can monitor that and apply
13 normal standards of safety. You take it out of service
14 before it's done, you know, 70 percent of its life, and that
15 works out. It's surprisingly cheap.

16 CROFF: Okay. Any other Board members?

17 Anybody in--I see somebody here in the third row,
18 not a Board member.

19 NORDSTROM: Kirk Nordstrom, U.S. Geological Survey. I
20 appreciated your presentations, and I had a question for
21 Wesley Patrick. You mentioned that engineering objectives
22 should be on a par with scientific objectives. One should
23 not be subordinate to the other. I'd be very curious to hear
24 how you would achieve that. I've seen that problem in many
25 projects myself, and I wondered, you know, how can you go

1 about and put in appropriate checks so that it did balance
2 out?

3 PATRICK: Patrick, Panel. I think two things from
4 experience and also they're philosophically pleasing, for
5 what that's worth as well. One is the organizational
6 structure; and as long as the scientists were shown in a
7 staff position to the line organization, the scientists'
8 roles, responsibilities, objectives were subordinate. When
9 it became part of the line organization, organizationally
10 they were on par. So, structurally, you can deal with that
11 in an organizational sense.

12 At least as important is organizational culture,
13 and that goes directly to, in the vernacular, "Who's running
14 the show, and does that person at the highest level of
15 leadership articulate and move down through the
16 organization?" But it's important that the entire suite of
17 objectives that the project personnel have agreed to and the
18 client has agreed to are indeed implemented with equality.

19 CROFF: Question in the front row here?

20 CHUR: Claus Chur with CCConsulting. I have a question
21 to Wesley. I understood from your presentation, you say
22 statutory or regulatory requirements will affect DBD
23 implementation--heat sheet retrieval. Does that mean
24 retrieval will now become a requirement?

25 PATRICK: Patrick, Panel. In the U.S. right now the

1 Nuclear Waste Policy Act requires that the Department of
2 Energy, the implementer, must include the potential for
3 retrieval in mined geological disposal. I have no idea
4 whether whatever statutory changes are made would require
5 that or not. I do not know that. I can't speculate on that.

6 But for some of the waste forms, these unusual
7 waste forms, there is no economic reason for retrieving them
8 and reusing them. Most likely spent nuclear fuel, that's not
9 necessarily the case. The second reason for having retrieval
10 is that if something is detected, untoward, unacceptable in
11 terms of long-term performance, early on in the process, then
12 retrieval might be a necessary option. There's a lot of
13 debate on whether retrieval makes sense or not, but that
14 really becomes a policy matter.

15 One thing I did try to articulate is that, given
16 the way the Deep Borehole Field Test is going to be executed,
17 they will be demonstrating retrieval with the exception of
18 post-packing materials being placed then so that that part--
19 they'll be able to do part of that retrieval demonstration.

20 Does that get at your question?

21 CHUR: Yeah, I understand exactly what you say. I just
22 think it needs clarification for the DBD project, because if
23 at the end retrieval after sealing would be a requirement,
24 that would change the total picture. So then it would not
25 make sense, in my feeling, to make a field test and--

1 PATRICK: Well, it could affect it. That would be one
2 of the objectives that would not be met, but it's worth
3 considering.

4 CROFF: If there's anybody from the DOE community that
5 would like to ask the panel a question, please feel free to
6 come to the microphone.

7 I'll ask a question maybe of Mark. How much do
8 bridge plugs--or would bridge plugs complicate retrieval?

9 MACGLASHAN: So there's various types of bridge plugs.
10 There are some that are drillable, and there are some that
11 are retrievable themselves. So they would definitely
12 complicate retrieval. The drillable ones, as the name
13 implies, are drillable, and they fragment when they're
14 drilled, and then they leave debris and the debris falls
15 down. They're usually made of a brittle cast iron that
16 breaks into small fragments.

17 The retrieval ones are just--they're latched on and
18 just pulled out. So those are the preferred bridge plug to
19 use for something that you want--if you want to retrieve
20 packages below the bridge plugs. Another disadvantage of the
21 retrievable, though, is that the retrieving mechanism can be
22 fouled, and then it can't be removed. So it's a risk every
23 time when it's put in place.

24 CROFF: And also along--this is a general line of
25 questioning probably to Ernie. In the project, what

1 assumptions is the project making concerning the regulatory
2 framework you're going to--I know you don't actually have
3 one, but what regulatory framework do you have in mind for
4 doing this whole thing?

5 HARDIN: We don't know. At the present time it's TBD
6 in our document. We said we know there are going to be these
7 types of regulations in effect, but we don't know whether the
8 present ones would be those.

9 CROFF: I'll open it up to Board staff. Oh, Rod, do you
10 have a question?

11 EWING: So this is to Ernie, and it goes back to your--
12 Rod Ewing, Board--it goes back to your presentation this
13 morning, but I think of this in the context of emplacement.
14 So if it were just a little shallower and the distance for
15 trips up and down would be less, the possibility of
16 characterizing the rock a little better might improve. So is
17 there any--or what's the reason for 5 kilometers? Why not 4?

18 HARDIN: Hardin, Sandia. I'll give you my personal
19 understanding of that question. It's related to two things,
20 the quality of the rock that is under sufficient confinement
21 that we're going to have the *in situ* stresses acting to close
22 up the permeability in the rock. And two is the drilling
23 effectiveness, the capacity to drill at a particular depth at
24 a particular diameter.

25 So you saw the curve today. We're at the margin of

1 what can be done. It produces a waste package of a useful
2 diameter for certain waste streams.

3 EWING: But the reasoning could go the other way.
4 Rather than be in the margin of what can be done, back off
5 and stay well within the margin and ask yourselves the
6 question whether that's not just as good.

7 HARDIN: Right, I agree. Hardin, Sandia, again. I
8 mean, we have done studies like what you're talking about or
9 similar to them anyway. And we look at what if we could
10 drill a 24-inch-diameter hole to 4 kilometers, or what if we
11 could drill something even larger to a shallower depth, given
12 the right site, the right waste stream, and this sort of
13 thing. Is that an appealing proposition? I think it could
14 be. My sense is that the thing that would be holding us back
15 is the cost of drilling the hole, which goes up with the
16 volume of the hole. You could think of it that way.

17 EWING: Okay, thank you.

18 CROFF: Board staff, any questions?

19 BAHR: Jean Bahr, Board. Another question for Ernie.
20 This morning you mentioned some sort of crumple impact
21 limiters in the design. And I was wondering what happens to
22 those if they do crumple; do they deform in a way that they
23 end up getting kind of stuck in the liner, and would that
24 affect retrievability?

25 HARDIN: So Hardin, Sandia. That's a great question. I

1 asked the same question of our engineering team. So when we
2 do get to that point, we need a design that crushes in a nice
3 way, and it needs to be tested. There are lots of different
4 kinds--I've learned that there are lots of different kinds of
5 impact limiters. So I believe that something like that would
6 be possible.

7 CROFF: Okay, front row.

8 HICKMAN: Yeah, this is Steve Hickman, USGS. I just
9 want to say, from the drilling perspective, we're over here
10 gossiping a little bit in the front row. But if you try and
11 retrieve something through open hole with all those plugs and
12 seals in place, it'll be extremely difficult. You could
13 sidetrack and all sorts of things. So we need to clarify
14 this issue of whether or not retrieval is going to be
15 expected through a one-kilometer-thick sealed-and-packed-off
16 zone or whether we're talking about retrieval inside a cased
17 hole, because those are very different challenges.

18 So that's something that needs to be resolved early
19 on, getting back to Claus's question.

20 CROFF: Anybody else? Going once. Okay, I think we've
21 exhausted ourselves here. I'd like to thank the panel very
22 much. Let's give them another round.

23 And to the next panel without a break. We're going
24 to change the tires with the engine running. So I'd like to
25 thank the panel. Don't forget to give up your microphones

1 and bring up the new one.

2 (Pause.)

3 FRANKEL: My name is Jerry Frankel, and it's my honor
4 and privilege to moderate the third and final panel of
5 today's activities.

6 We are going to discuss boreholes. We've heard a
7 lot already. We've heard, in fact, that we are relying on
8 the natural barrier of a very deep rock formation to protect
9 this radioactive waste and delay its release. But, on the
10 other hand, we have this straight path back up to the world,
11 and we have to make sure that that highway isn't open and is
12 blocked off. So we have a panel of three experts, all from
13 academia, to help us go into some more detail about borehole
14 seals. And I would like to introduce them now.

15 Our first panelist is Paul Bommer. He is in the
16 Petroleum Engineering Department at the University of Texas,
17 like his colleague, Eric van Oort, who we've heard of before.
18 I guess it makes sense that University of Texas has a strong
19 program in petroleum engineering. Paul has 25 years'
20 experience in oil and gas operations. He is now torturing
21 undergraduates on topics like drilling and completion. And
22 we have asked him to participate in this discussion by
23 bringing his experience from the oil field operations in the
24 area of borehole sealing.

25 The second panelist is Nick Collier, who is in the

1 deep borehole disposal research group at the University of
2 Sheffield, a group that was started by Fergus Gibb, whom
3 we've heard from. So Nick has a Ph.D. in cement science. I
4 think the gauntlet has been thrown down on cements already,
5 so he'll have a chance to address that. But Nick is involved
6 in these other topics that Professor Gibb described in terms
7 of new ways for waste form support matrices and barriers
8 against release, and we'll be hearing more about that.

9 Our third panelist is Roland Pusch, who is from
10 the--he's a Professor Emeritus at the Technical University in
11 Luleå. I probably didn't say that right. He has a Ph.D. in
12 soil mechanics and geology and, by his own account, has a
13 hundred years' experience in the field; and I have no reason
14 to doubt him on that. He has been involved in many aspects
15 of the topics that we're discussing and has written a book on
16 rock mechanics and recently published a book entitled
17 "Bentonite", simply "Bentonite". You can get it on Amazon.
18 So we've asked him to discuss bentonite as a borehole
19 sealant.

20 So what we're going to do is follow the same MO as
21 the previous panels. We'll ask the panelists to try and
22 limit their presentation to ten minutes or so, and then we'll
23 have a little discussion amongst ourselves and open it up. I
24 think there's probably more questions and comments on this
25 area.

1 So, first, Paul will come up and have some
2 introductory comments as well into borehole seals.

3 BOMMER: Thank you. I get fifteen minutes, because I
4 get to do this. So I have the classic Andy Warhol fifteen
5 minutes of fame, and it's counting right now.

6 Since Jerry brought it up and Professor van Oort
7 brought it up, I get to pile on a little bit more about the
8 undergraduates. An undergraduate is the only consumer in the
9 world who pays good money for a product and then hopes like
10 hell he doesn't get it. It's a joke, okay? Come on. It's
11 4:00 o'clock. Come on. All right, so we'll get serious if
12 that's the way you want to be.

13 Borehole seals. All right, so our overarching
14 questions--and I'm not sure we're going to answer these
15 completely--what materials and process have been developed
16 for sealing and used to seal boreholes under representative
17 conditions? What evidence is there for long-term
18 effectiveness of borehole seals? How can we predict the
19 long-term performance of seals? And what level of
20 performance of a borehole seal is critical to the safety of
21 deep borehole disposal?

22 All right, now, this slide--I want to spend a
23 couple of minutes on this, because this really, I think, is
24 an important slide even though the cartoon is poor. This is
25 supposed to be somewhat similar to the cartoon you've seen

1 already about the proposed plugging of the deep borehole well
2 for radioactive waste. And I want to draw your attention
3 that this thing has been filled top to bottom with solid
4 material.

5 Now, the solid material, we can argue about that.
6 Some of it may be cement; some of it may be asphalt; some of
7 it may be clay; some of it may be gravel; some of it may be
8 sand; but it's all solid. And this, in my mind, helps to
9 replicate the overburden that we have gleefully removed with
10 a drill bit. So as the lady from Pennsylvania pointed out
11 already, the borehole is the way out. I mean, we can argue
12 about cracks in the rock and, you know, all this other stuff;
13 but if the borehole is not sealed, that's the way out. This
14 is the most important activity that we will do on this well,
15 and that's called sealing it up.

16 So I think filling this up with some kind of solid
17 material is very important. And there are a couple of
18 analogs for that. Back in the '60s/'70s there were two
19 nuclear bombs set off in low-permeability gas reservoirs to
20 see if it stimulated gas production. One of them was called
21 the Gasbuggy Project. The other one was called the Rulison
22 Project, both of them in Colorado.

23 The second one, the deeper of the two, the Rulison
24 Project, was 8,200 feet deep, and they set off a 40-kiloton
25 device in that well. And that 40-kiloton device made a

1 gigantic cavern. And the wells that were drilled, one was
2 drilled to emplace the device. Another one was drilled as a
3 monitoring device. The monitor well was filled up top to
4 bottom with cement. The emplacement well was filled up top
5 to bottom with alternating layers of nothing more than gravel
6 and sand. Now, when that thing went off, it actually had
7 surface manifestations. The wells did not fail. So those
8 wells proved to my mind that even in the presence of setting
9 off a nuclear device, we ought to be able to plug them.

10 So that is why I think the cartoon showing this
11 completely full of solid material is very important. And
12 you'll see the difference between this idea and what the oil
13 and gas business routinely gets away with a little later.

14 Okay, let's see, we've had lots of people who
15 studied this, are studying it. We've heard of one innovation
16 from Professor van Oort already today. I'm sure there are
17 many others. Modeling of the seals has been done. It
18 suggests long-term stability. I don't know what--I don't
19 know how to feel about models. I had an aerospace engineer
20 one time tell me, "Look, if you've got somebody who's got a
21 competing model, you can make theirs eat dirt." So, I don't
22 know, you know, models are only as good as the mathematics
23 and the assumptions behind them. I don't know how good we
24 feel about that for thousands of years. Now, the life of the
25 material, there may be a few analogs for this, not many.

1 Okay, so here's my part.

2 In oil and gas wells, we've already discussed that
3 we need to have seals on the outside if we're going to
4 stabilize the wellbore with casing. That's shown by the
5 curved arrow, showing an annulus that's been successfully
6 filled with cement. And whenever it's time to get rid of
7 this thing, plug and abandon it, which nobody in the oil and
8 gas business likes to spend a darn dime to do, you're
9 supposed to fill it up with a sealant on the inside, and
10 normally that's cement.

11 And I must say that the seals--you really can't do
12 this divorced from the architecture of the wellbore. So all
13 of this has got to be a unified plan. You better think about
14 the end of the day when you're designing the wellbore.

15 Okay, so traditional seals are Portland cement.
16 Now, I have to confess, I don't hate Portland cement with
17 quite the same vigor as Dr. van Oort; but I may come around
18 to it before he's completely finished with me. He is a very
19 persuasive man.

20 Portland cement is still widely in use; and when it
21 works, it forms a low-permeability solid that establishes
22 strength. If it's correctly formulated, it resists corrosive
23 attack; and if it's properly used, it forms adequate bonds
24 with the casing and the rock. Lots of "ifs" in there.

25 Now, here are some mechanical devices. Some people

1 use external, swellable packers--that would be that guy--on
2 the casing. This is a picture of a bridge plug that could be
3 set inside the casing. And this guy over here is expandable
4 casing. Right there is the part that's being expanded. You
5 know, all of these could be counted on maybe to seal, maybe
6 not. They're just a mechanical device after all, but
7 sometimes people use them.

8 All right, so seals certainly can fail; and if they
9 do, we have a channel. The channel is the flow path. The
10 flow path could happen because I did poor practice. You
11 know, lots of oil and gas companies get away with poor
12 practice, and a bad cement job is their reward for this. If
13 I exceed the mechanical strengths of the seal--Dr. van Oort
14 has alluded to that already--I'm going to crack it; it'll
15 fall apart. Cement exposed to fluids that degrade it will,
16 of course, affect quality of the solid.

17 And back to the mechanical devices, external casing
18 packers can fail; they may not set. Who knows what kind of
19 seal you really got when you expand the expandable casing.
20 And bridge plugs, even though commonly used as part of the
21 plugging process, in my opinion, should not be counted on as
22 part of the long-term plug. So failure of any of these just
23 give us a flow channel.

24 All right, so now let's talk about the plug and
25 abandonment of oil and gas wells anyway. That's really my

1 charter. I'm supposed to talk about oil and gas wells.

2 Clearly there are regulations for this. There's a
3 governing body out there. Dr. van Oort has already showed a
4 detail of offshore regulations for plug and abandonment. So
5 let's take a look at a couple of more cartoons. This guy
6 over here might be a cartoon for a simple well that turned
7 out to be an ouchy. That's just a good old-fashioned dry
8 hole. There's nothing in here but maybe saltwater.

9 So if that's what we find, the regulatory body
10 might require us to set a plug at the bottom of the well. A
11 hundred-foot cement plug is typically all you have to do.
12 And then up at the top I've got a hundred-foot plug that's
13 going across the shoe of the surface casing, another hundred-
14 foot plug across the base of the usable quality water, a
15 ten-foot plug in the top, and I whack the wellhead off and
16 weld a cap on top, bury it, and hope I never see it again.

17 Now, everything else between these cement plugs is
18 the drilling mud that was there. There is a statutory weight
19 for the drilling mud. But, you know, drilling mud left in
20 here in perpetuity kind of falls apart. The solids begin to
21 fall out of it, they go to the bottom, and what you have left
22 in here is mostly water if it's water-base. Or if you went
23 to the trouble and expense to leave synthetic oil-base or
24 oil-base mud in here, it's probably just going to be mostly
25 oil. So it's debatable how much good that mud does in

1 actually preventing the cross-flow of fluids.

2 Now, the second cartoon over here might be an old
3 producing well where part of the production casing has been
4 cut and pulled. Down here at the bottom, that cement plug,
5 you might actually be able to just spot that inside the
6 production casing. But I would propose a better way would be
7 to do what they call a "squeeze job" where I'm going to force
8 this cement under pressure to go out through the perforations
9 and enter--in whatever fashion I can force it--enter into the
10 matrix, enter into the permeability, plus leave the cement
11 inside the wellbore so I've got a plug inside and out.

12 And that might be something to consider here. If
13 we're going to use cement, maybe figuring out ways to do
14 squeeze jobs for the emplacement of some of the cement plugs
15 might help force some of the cement outside the borehole
16 itself. But then, beyond that, the well is left full of mud,
17 and I've got a hundred-foot plug here and a hundred-foot plug
18 there, ten-foot plug at the top, and I think I'm done.

19 Okay, now, there are a few alternatives out there,
20 and not listed is some of the newest stuff. This is out of
21 the literature. Portland cement with blast furnace slag
22 might produce a stronger, more resistant cement. Blast
23 furnace slag has been reported to convert clay-based drilling
24 muds to a cementitious material. Modified, chemically-bonded
25 phosphate ceramics, Halliburton and others got on board with

1 one of the national labs and created some cements that, to my
2 knowledge, are working okay out in a couple of geothermal
3 wells in Indonesia.

4 You can even make temporary plugs of barite.
5 Barite, of course, is a high-specific-gravity solid. Or I
6 could put in here some bentonite. I think my colleague,
7 Roland, will speak eloquently about that, so I need to say no
8 more about bentonite. It is a low-specific-gravity solid.
9 But both of these could be solids that we might choose to
10 help fill up part of the wellbore.

11 All right, now, testing of this, getting back to
12 the lady from Pennsylvania who was worried about the
13 conventional design of the well--and certainly there are
14 parts of our well that will be conventional designs--I'm
15 going to cement casing in the ground, and, by golly, I hope
16 it stays there forever.

17 One thing we might choose to do before we say that
18 was acceptable, we can run cement bond logs. A cement bond
19 log is a wireline tool that I'm sure our friend from
20 Schlumberger could speak at great lengths about. Cement bond
21 logs will tell us whether or not the cement quality outside
22 that casing looks acceptable or not, so we probably ought to
23 think about doing that before we accept that cement job.

24 A negative test, a positive test, these are just
25 pressure tests placed across the solid to see if it'll hold.

1 And, you know, you could even go down and tag it. I can tag
2 the wellbore to make sure if I really intend to fill it all
3 the way up with solid material, I can tag it with a wireline,
4 make sure the fill-up is occurring correctly.

5 And then general guidelines: Use enough sealant--
6 more is better--use cement that we believe will give us the
7 strength we want; and, by all means, using the right stuff
8 with poor practice never works. So there are some poor
9 practice/good practice issues we should always keep in mind.

10 And, in addition to the two wells out in Colorado
11 that didn't leak when the thermonuclear devices were set off
12 in the hole, as Dr. van Oort already pointed out, the Romans
13 invented this stuff. And the last time I checked, the
14 Colosseum and at least part of the aqueduct are still
15 standing, and they've been there over 2,000 years. So
16 sometimes the magic works.

17 All right, thank you.

18 COLLIER: Thank you very much. Thank you to the Board
19 for the invitation to contribute to this workshop, and I'm
20 just going to bend down and I'm just going to retrieve the
21 glove that was just dropped earlier for me.

22 So I'm just going to talk about sealing and support
23 matrices. The University of Sheffield deep borehole disposal
24 concept uses various matrices to fill annular space within
25 the disposal zone. First of all, that's the annulus between

1 the waste package and the borehole casing and then between
2 the borehole casing and the rock wall itself, and we call
3 these sealing and support matrices. Apologies for the
4 acronym, but we refer to them as SSMS. And as the name
5 suggests, they, first of all, seal the individual waste
6 packages within the disposal zone and also support individual
7 packages during deployments.

8 In terms of individually sealing the packages
9 within the disposal zone, the low-permeability matrices
10 restrict access of the borehole fluids to the casing and the
11 canisters and delay any corrosion processes and also restrict
12 the flow path of any gas generated from corrosion.

13 So this is just a quick schematic of the various
14 options that we work on. On the left-hand side is the HDSM
15 option--again, apologies for the acronym--the high-density
16 support matrix--and I'll explain that shortly--on the
17 right-hand side cement grouts option. And these are the
18 waste containers within each disposal zone. But I'll explain
19 that more shortly. But, essentially, these matrices are
20 there to maximize the near-field safety case, so please keep
21 that in mind at all times.

22 Okay, so we've got two main SSM variants. The
23 preferred option is this high-density support matrix, which
24 is essentially a lead-based low melting temperature alloy
25 with a eutectic solidus around 185°C. So when the

1 temperatures in any of the annuli exceed that, the HDSM
2 melts, flows around the waste packages, and we find it
3 solidifies. If the temperatures within the annuli do not
4 exceed this, then you can't use the high-density support
5 matrix, because it would not melt; and in that case we use
6 cement grout, which is what I'm working on, and in this
7 instance we are developing an API Class G oilwell cement.

8 So just to explain a bit more of the high-density
9 support matrix operation, there's a quick animation here. So
10 here is the bottom of the disposal zone lined with a
11 perforated casing. You then emplace your first waste
12 container using either coiled tubing or a drill pipe,
13 whichever option you go for. That's immediately followed by
14 a release of the high-density support matrix to fill both the
15 annuli, because the material will flow through to the outside
16 annulus. You then insert the rest of the containers at
17 intervals, each with a quota of high-density support matrix,
18 and then add an extra head, like so. And the waste package
19 heat will melt the matrix; it'll flow and settle into the
20 annuli and eventually solidify, therefore sealing your
21 individual containers within the disposal zone.

22 So that's a little bit about the HDSM--sorry--the
23 high-density support matrix.

24 Moving on to the cement grout, so the grout that
25 we've developed has to have various physical and chemical

1 properties. And so the physical properties we need to
2 consider workplace properties such as thickening and setting
3 time to ensure correct deployment; viscosity and flow
4 characteristics to allow it to flow around the waste
5 packages; properties such as density, permeability, and
6 porosity to ensure we provide the best seal around the waste
7 packages, and also other properties such as strength so that
8 the grout is strong enough to withstand the overlying force
9 from the containers--sorry--the force from the overlying
10 containers.

11 In terms of chemical properties that are important,
12 so it's just like we've heard this afternoon: reactions
13 between the grouts and the borehole fluids, the waste
14 containers, the casing, and the near-field rock. Similarly,
15 we need to also ensure that the grout produced is durable in
16 terms of composition and microstructure, and we can control
17 that by the cement precursor powders.

18 We look at three critical times in terms of grout
19 deployment. That's the time to get the grout package down to
20 the disposal zone, the time to float around the waste
21 package, and then the time to set. So we are developing two
22 options, the first one being called Option 1--now, there's a
23 surprise--where you put the waste package in first and then
24 followed by the grout, and the grout flows around the waste
25 package, thereby sealing it in.

1 Option 2 is a converse of this where you put the
2 grout in first and second the waste package, and the waste
3 package sinks down through the grout.

4 We look at various delivery methods such as
5 pumping, using coiled tubing as in remedial cementing. We're
6 considering looking at dump bailer equipment to locate a
7 volume of grout within the disposal zone and also to design a
8 bespoke delivery solution.

9 We also need to consider the influence of the
10 borehole environment on the cement grout. For those cement
11 chemists out there, you will know that the elevated
12 temperature and pressure causes acceleration of the grout
13 thickening and setting, so we need to retard that so that we
14 get the paste down to the deployment zone as a wet paste. So
15 we're looking at using organic and inorganic materials there.
16 Also, the elevated temperature and pressure will also affect
17 the hardened paste composition, which is important, because
18 we want the most durable and strongest cement hydrate phase
19 to form.

20 In terms of the grout, the groundwater composition
21 of this may influence workplace properties, so the most
22 important there is the amount of chloride present in the
23 groundwater, because that may affect setting again. So we
24 need to assess that.

25 In terms of the effects of the irradiation, we will

1 look at this in terms of experimental work in the future.
2 But we take confidence from the fact that the likely dose
3 from a container of spent fuel or vitrified HLW is likely to
4 be at least on order of magnitude less than that experienced
5 by grouts during the developmental work that was performed in
6 the 1980s in the occasions where we cemented waste.

7 So that's about the SSM, the sealing and support
8 matrices, what we do to select which ones in use. So we
9 perform heat plug modeling at Sheffield, so this is just an
10 example of that work, so these are time and temperature plots
11 for a thousand pins of 15-year-old spent UO_2 . These are the
12 isotherms in the middle, bottom, and top of the containers at
13 $185^\circ C$ eutectic solidus of the HDSM. So the temperature in
14 this portion of the graph, you use HDSM. At the temperatures
15 down here you use the cement grouts. And the assessments of
16 these heat flow results will decide which matrix you select
17 for which disposal scenario.

18 Okay, so just a final slide now on the rockwelding.
19 Fergus Gibb explained it briefly this morning, but I was also
20 asked to put a slide in about this. So it's a process that's
21 being developed at the University of Sheffield, and its
22 purpose is to cause isolation of the disposal zone, so
23 effectively to seal off the borehole after the disposal zone
24 has been filled up. And, essentially, it's the only method
25 capable of eliminating the disturbed rock zone, which is

1 produced during the drilling process.

2 It uses a sacrificial electrical heater to melt and
3 fuse both crushed granite backfill, which you add, and also
4 the host rock as well. And that's just what's shown in this.
5 This is the top waste package. There is some crushed granite
6 backfill that has been added; a cement plug; you then cut
7 away and remove the borehole casing. You locate a volume of
8 crushed granite backfill followed by your electrical heater
9 on an umbilical, further volume of crushed granite backfill,
10 followed by a pressure seal, and you then just switch on your
11 electrical heater, and it melts both the crushed granite
12 backfill and also the host rock around it. So it fuses the
13 crushed granite backfill within the host rock. You can do
14 multiple welds above the disposal zone.

15 So, like I said, it's under development at the
16 University of Sheffield, so the R&D activities that we are
17 performing are based on heat flow modeling; experimental
18 melting and recrystallization of the granitic rock and then
19 refined for the host rock; design of downhole heater
20 packages; deployment engineering; and then, finally, larger-
21 scale trials.

22 So I hope that that explains what we're doing and
23 the options that are there in terms of the sealing and
24 support matrices and also the rockwelding. Thanks for your
25 attention.

1 PUSCH: Firstly, I'd like to express my gratitude for
2 having been invited to this meeting. And I've learned a lot
3 from this, but don't change my mind, of course.

4 So the next one here, this is me here, and then we
5 see that one. Well, this is something that has been
6 expressed in various ways by people giving lectures here;
7 that is, how the rock structure really is. And what I wanted
8 to show is that if we--oh, good heavens, that was too much--
9 Okay, so that one.

10 This is a schematic, a picture four big rock
11 elements, each with, say, 500- to 1-kilometer edge length.
12 And what it is meant to show is that up here in the first 500
13 meters down to a 1,000 meters we have frequent fracture
14 zones, big ones, smaller ones, and they are all interacting.
15 If we take out the elements and look at the elements, it
16 looks like that. So these continuities are on different
17 orders.

18 Now, if we move from this area, this is the
19 400-meter area. Here is where SKB's mined repositories are
20 and four other major--these large amount of fracture zones
21 that are hydrologically active and interactive. If you move
22 down we see that fewer and fewer of these fractures zones, so
23 what remains to see here is the major fracture zones. These
24 are the ones that carry water. These are the ones along
25 which displacements, tectonic and seismic events take place.

1 So one can say we understand all that if we should find the
2 proper place for a VDH hole--for a deep hole. It should be
3 that interactive(inaudible) minimum number of major fracture
4 zones that we have identified by all these geophysical
5 measurements we know that we need to have for characterizing
6 the rock volume.

7 So the next one would be--this is also something
8 that has been mentioned that is of absolutely greatest
9 importance; that is, the density of the groundwater. This is
10 the essence of the VDH concept.

11 This is a Swedish example; it's made by SKB. It's
12 a number of boreholes south of Stockholm, and here we can how
13 the different salt contents are distributed. So down here
14 the brownish thing is old, heavy, and stationary salt water.
15 The higher up we become here, we see that we have less salt
16 water, and this is movable. So it's very important, I think,
17 to realize that if we can come down below 2, 3 kilometers
18 depth, we are in an area where groundwater is practically
19 immovable and will not bring up any radionuclides that may be
20 released from the waste.

21 Now we come to bentonite. I hate bentonite,
22 because that is the geological name. What it is is a clay
23 that is rich in smectite, expandable mineral. This is to be
24 remembered. I would say that to my students--the test they
25 will never pass if they say bentonite instead of smectite.

1 The constitution of the clay here. The dominant
2 clay mineral belongs to the smectite family. There's a lot
3 of them, nontronite, beidelite, and God knows what. And they
4 form a continuous system with very small voids, and that is
5 the reason why the permeability is a hundred to ten thousand
6 times lower than ordinary clays like illite and kaolinite.

7 So if we make a schematic section on this small
8 scale, say a tenth or a hundredth of a millimeter, we have
9 these systems called stacks of lamellae. Water in here is
10 not movable. It's actually locked and fixed, attached to the
11 clay mineral surface. But we have channels that we have open
12 voids, and these are the ones indicated here. There is where
13 the water moves.

14 My throat was okay this morning, but not anymore.
15 What happened?

16 We have a bulk density of smectite-rich clay that
17 we may call bentonite, but remember the incorrectness. That
18 is on the order of 1800 to 2000 kg/m³. Then the hydraulic
19 conductivity and the swelling pressure are fabulous. So,
20 again, they say the bentonite. I hate it. I hate it because
21 you use it.

22 This is dispersed clay, so all these little flakes
23 here, they represent groups of parallel lamellae sticking
24 together. Between them we have voids of different size here.

25 Now, if we consider a little unit here, it looks

1 like this. If we have, in the case of sodium saturated
2 montmorillonite in a salt. This is very low density. Those
3 who can read it, this is below 1600 kilograms per cubic
4 meters for each individual diagram.

5 So here is water that is organized between the
6 lamellae here. It's impermeable. This water is not movable.
7 If we apply a very high hydraulic gradient, we can have water
8 flowing here. But on the normal condition it doesn't--

9 FRANKEL: Water--

10 PUSCH: Thank you. What they say here is that when the
11 density increases of the clay, the swelling pressure, called
12 the PS, increases. So we go from a very low value--from a
13 density that's typical of borehole muds of 1100 kg/m³ whereas
14 swelling pressure is none and increase that to about 1600,
15 1800 kg/m³, the swelling pressure increases to about one
16 megapascal; that is 1000 kg/cm². You know what that pressure
17 is? It's a rather heavy lady dancing step dance, having high
18 heels and standing on one of them. That's 1000 kg/cm², if
19 she is jumping--

20 The difference between the diagrams here--I'm too
21 old for that.

22 (Pause.)

23 That will be much better. Can I give you a sign
24 like that? Next, please.

25 Well, this is what bentonite is like. You have

1 that in Wyoming and South Dakota and various other places, in
2 Europe, and it's all over the world. To the left you see
3 that there is an excavational exploitation of such clay in
4 Northern Germany. And if you take a piece of that and core
5 it on the table here, it looks like that. If you take that
6 and put it in a little hole and let the clay take up water
7 while keeping it in that little hole, you get this.

8 So every little grain here expands and swells out,
9 and it ends up as a cubic element that is rich in water and
10 is soft. But if you have it prepared by putting this
11 material in a form and apply a pressure, then you come up
12 to--you get this type of block. So this one has been
13 compacted under 100 megapascal, and I would say the diameter
14 here is about 30-centimeter thickness, about 15-centimeter, and
15 the density--the dry density, that we call it, without
16 considering water is on the order of 1600 or 1700. You would
17 never forget this speech, nor would I. We have prepared
18 blocks like that with a diameter of 2 meters. But as for
19 plugging big boreholes that can put in canisters with highly
20 radioactive material.

21 You'll recognize this picture also from the
22 previous presentation. This is, in principle, how I think
23 one can do. We put in here clay plugs. These are the clay
24 plugs. And here below, in our case, there is no waste until
25 down to 1,500 meters; in your case it's 2,000 meters or 3,000

1 meters. Yeah. And down here we have the same principle as
2 you propose here, and that is to have the supercontainers
3 separated by clay. This is what it looks like.

4 So these are the boreholes. And in the upper part
5 where we do not have any waste, we just put in these
6 supercontainers. This is a supercontainer. And you'll see
7 the perforated liner tube here. And in that is the canister
8 with highly-radioactive waste.

9 And between is clay, highly-compacted clay. And
10 this clay, when you put it in here, it takes up water from
11 the rock, it expands, and since we assume that we start with
12 a bore mud in the hole--so if one starts here with a highly-
13 compacted clay with a dry density of, say, 1600 to 1700
14 kg/m³, it would take up water through the perforation. And
15 the clay expands through the perforation and consolidates the
16 clay mud that is outside here.

17 That means that in a few days, I would say in 24
18 hours, the mud is being consolidated to a thicker state.
19 After a long week, the difference is much less. Mud has been
20 stiff clay and this clay here has been a little thinner, a
21 little softer, because it's given off the clay.

22 So you end up in a system that is a fairly
23 homogeneous clay mass that has a density of about 1900 to
24 2000 kg/m³. That clay is impermeable. We don't have--am I to
25 stop now--all this trouble I've caused--I would say that it's

1 impermeable since we do not have any hydraulic gradients in
2 the VDH, no horizontal, no vertical, and with this extremely
3 dense clay, we have no percolation of water. Diffusion takes
4 place. So if we have concentration differences in units, in
5 ions, then diffusion can take place.

6 Next please. Try to read the end of it here.

7 So if we look at the upper one that the function of
8 the bentonite seals in the upper part and down here is--well,
9 that's also the upper part--but where temperature starts to
10 be a little higher. So we see that we have here--when this
11 clay with 1900 k/m^3 finally gets calcium-saturated, because
12 the groundwater has calcium as dominant cation, then the
13 hydraulic conductivity can be up to 10^{-11} meter per second,
14 but in practice it would be lower than that.

15 And if you see down here--what happened with the
16 metallic ions--that is the canister and this perforated tube--
17 -what happens with that? They be converted to magnetite,
18 hematite also under both aerobic and anaerobic corrosion.
19 And this gives of free ions. And what happens is that these
20 ions exchange some of the ions in the clay like this;
21 aluminum will be released from the clay like this or move
22 over to the tetrahedral sheet in the clay so that an internal
23 exchange of cations in the crystal.

24 But we also get release of silica. So silica in
25 the case, we have a quick reaction; and when the temperature

1 is hot, we get silica to become oversaturated. It's
2 oversaturated with respect to silica. Then silica is
3 precipitated, and we get cementation.

4 Next please—soon going to stop. So there is where
5 we have up to 150 centigrade, and since we have a high
6 density, there is no risk of erosion. It would not be
7 affected by water flowing there, and there's a long-term
8 function of them. We see that when temperature again is
9 going down to less than 100 centigrade, we would still have
10 the phenomenon with silica precipitation. But the clay
11 minerals are intact. So, in principle we have
12 montmorillonite, which is the major clay mineral here, is
13 preserved over--I would say over practically any period of
14 time.

15 I wouldn't believe this myself if I didn't have
16 validation from the nature itself. There are a number of
17 practical examples, like in Sweden, we have bentonite layers
18 where we have temperature impulse from diabase being spread
19 over the--or pressed into a series of sediments, giving
20 approximately the same temperature history as we have in the
21 VDH here.

22 And there is Ordovician time. It's 450 million
23 years ago. And if we go there and take samples, we see that
24 there is still 25 percent montmorillonite like this. It's
25 ductile. It's expandable. So the mechanism is clear. We

1 have it demonstrated and validated by nature.

2 So, at last. Thank you.

3 FRANKEL: Okay, well, we won't forget that. Smectite,
4 right? Not bentonite.

5 So I'd like to give any of the panelists an
6 opportunity to add anything to this or--

7 BOMMER: Roland, I have a question.

8 FRANKEL: Can you give your name?

9 BOMMER: Bommer, panel member. Roland, it's possible
10 that the wellbore will be drilled with an oil-base drilling
11 fluid. If your supercontainers are put down at the bottom of
12 the well with oil-base drilling fluid, does that change the
13 dynamic of the way they react?

14 PUSCH: I don't think there would be very much change.
15 But organics are not allowed in repositories like that. So
16 the oil left in the system, the problem is that all organic
17 materials that we have in the repository can create organic
18 colloids, and organic colloids are radionuclide-bearing, so
19 that was absolutely forbidden to have--we can't even in the
20 concrete have fluidizer, you know, the ordinary fluidizer of
21 concrete. We can't have that. Instead, we can have minerals
22 like talc, which is a new type of concrete that we've
23 developed.

24 FRANKEL: Go ahead, Nick.

25 COLLIER: Is it okay if I just say something on that

1 point—in terms of organics? Nick Collier, University of
2 Sheffield. You're right. In the GDF environment, yes,
3 organics are not allowed. I think what should be considered
4 is that this is a different environment, okay? So you're at
5 high pressure and high temperature, and that environment is
6 going to break down any sort of organics that you use.

7 So, for instance, you use organic materials as very
8 efficient retarders and also semi-plasticizers and we are
9 looking at those for our grouts. We are also looking at
10 inorganic materials as well, of course. But the temperature
11 and pressure will break down the organics that are used. And
12 I think we should also bear in mind that once the borehole
13 has sealed itself above the disposal zone, just like somebody
14 was saying this morning, it doesn't matter.

15 PUSCH: I have a short comment on that. I have not
16 investigated that, so I cannot say whether it's reasonable or
17 not. What I can say is that the authorities would never
18 accept it in Finland and Sweden.

19 COLLIER: Yes, it would need to be assessed for the
20 safety case. But I think it's different for the deep
21 borehole disposal environmental--GDF environment.

22 FRANKEL: I think that gets to one of the points that
23 was a question here that maybe no one really addressed, but
24 how best to test these seals? So what we can we do? I think
25 Steve Hickman said that they need to perform over a long

1 time. And so do we need to test over a long time? Can we do
2 meaningful accelerated tests? Yeah, Paul.

3 BOMMER: Bommer, panel member. I think when the seals
4 are being installed, they're certainly possible to test. You
5 can see if they're there; you can tag them; you can pressure
6 test them; you can do whatever you want to do to them. But
7 after it's done, the only way to figure out if anything is
8 migrating towards the surface would be to have some monitor
9 wells. And the monitor wells would have to be drilled to, I
10 don't know, whatever depth we're interested in protecting,
11 certainly the base of the usable-quality water, and then how
12 long do you do it? Who's going to mind the store over--if
13 it's 30 years, I could see it. If it's a thousand years, ah.

14 FRANKEL: Well, I'm thinking of coming up with a safety
15 case, right? So they're doing a field test and not putting
16 seals down in there, doing laboratory tests. So can we use
17 laboratory tests to predict the long-term behavior, or does
18 it matter?

19 COLLIER: Nick Collier, University of Sheffield. I
20 don't know. There is no evidence for long-term testing. And
21 because it's such a long-term process, it's extremely hard.

22 Somebody was saying this morning, "Well, why don't
23 we use analogs to do some testing?" But in the
24 Characterization Hole, before we then start to move on to the
25 Field Test Hole, you need to test that for thousands of

1 years, don't you? So it's extremely hard. And as far as I
2 know, there aren't any methods to accelerate that either. So
3 it does need to be assessed.

4 In terms of the cement durability--and, by the way,
5 I could give a whole lecture on the reasons for using cements
6 and how they would operate, but I'm not going to.

7 We can take a bit of encouragement from the natural
8 analogs, for instance the site out in Jordan where they had
9 rock strengths that are similar to cement composition. And
10 they've been out there for millions of years with groundwater
11 flowing through, and they have been extremely stable, very
12 durable, for millions of years. But it's hard to then
13 convert that from that natural analog into something that we
14 could use in this case.

15 FRANKEL: Roland.

16 PUSCH: I would like to add one thing, and that is that
17 according to the program that we have got for the test hole
18 that DOE is planning, there was a question how can you test
19 those? Can you test the clay, the tightness or the units?
20 Can you test that on site? And for clay, you cannot, because
21 you would not be able to get the clay fully saturated in less
22 than 200 years. Then to make a percolation test would take
23 another 500 years.

24 And so in the future, my grand grand grandson, he could
25 perhaps engage for that.

1 But the clay is so fantastically tight, so the only
2 way of getting information on the performance is to run
3 accelerated laboratory tests and understand the mechanism.
4 As long as you understand the mechanism, you can be accepted
5 in a relatively short--

6 FRANKEL: As long as the mechanism doesn't change in the
7 accelerated tests.

8 COLLIER: So you can--sorry, can I say something?

9 FRANKEL: Please.

10 COLLIER: You can do leaching investigations, of course,
11 but that's not the same as sealing investigations, you know,
12 because that's what we're talking about here, isn't it sir--

13 FRANKEL: Yeah.

14 COLLIER: --the sealing performance. And, of course,
15 I'm sure that we are all aware of leaching tests that are
16 done for materials that are used in the geological disposal
17 facilities, but it's a different environment here, a
18 different application, I think.

19 FRANKEL: Okay, I'd like to ask the Board to bring up
20 any questions or comments they might have.

21 EWING: So Rod Ewing, Board. Just to continue the
22 discussion of testing procedures, given the apparent
23 importance of the seal for this type of strategy, because
24 that's the difference between it working and not working in
25 terms of communication with the surface, wouldn't it make

1 sense to do the work on seals early and more diligently
2 rather than waiting?

3 As an example, I can imagine experiments where you
4 would have relatively shallow holes. You would try the
5 different seals--concrete, bentonite, and so on--and then
6 after five or ten years take core and see what had happened.
7 Now, in the case of bentonite, the expectation would be that
8 not much, because you need longer, but it would still be
9 important to confirm that not much has happened.

10 So I think--I can imagine field tests and
11 laboratory tests that would be relevant to this strategy, but
12 there is some urgency about doing this early in the program,
13 not at the end.

14 PUSCH: Absolutely. If I can answer that, this is
15 exactly what we've been doing. So we have been running an
16 underground factory for our major depths under repository
17 condition tests similar to that, so with clay and cement, and
18 extracted that after four years, I think it was, finding then
19 how the process is going on. And it's exactly what I could
20 expect. The predictions said that, and it was demonstrated.
21 But it was not complete, because it would take 300 hundred
22 before it did that. But you could see--as you say, we could
23 find out whether the predictions are correct, if the model is
24 right.

25 COLLIER: Collier, University of Sheffield. I agree, as

1 long as we test at the same temperature and pressure as will
2 be down the borehole. And that's what's tricky. I mean, we
3 can probably get access to the boreholes in the U.K. that are
4 a thousand meters deep, but that's no good because it's not
5 hot enough or has the kind of pressure without, you know,
6 designing and building kits to mimic that. But, again, you
7 can't accelerate the testing. That's what's hard, isn't it,
8 because you can't wait a few thousand years to see if the
9 seals work. You can develop theories from studying them in
10 the short-term, but then doing long-term testing is extremely
11 difficult.

12 FRANKEL: Mary Lou.

13 ZOBACK: Okay, this may sound tongue-in-cheek, but this
14 morning Sue Brantley asked if there were any microbial
15 studies planned for the test borehole, and I think the answer
16 was no. And just for a lark, I Googled microbes that eat
17 cement and found 330,000 references. And if it's going to be
18 down there for a hundred thousand years and starts out nice
19 and warm and all this additional energy that hadn't been
20 underground since the Precambrian, might we create a factory
21 that would have these lovely things growing and just munching
22 down the cement plugs?

23 COLLIER: Okay, can I pick up my gauntlet once again,
24 please? Nick Collier, University of Sheffield. What I
25 didn't say here and what I wanted to say right from the start

1 was that the work that we're doing is not advocating the use
2 of cement as the final borehole seal, so it's to provide
3 additional sealing within the annuli. So you haven't just
4 got water in there that's causing corrosion of the canister
5 or the casing. You provide an additional barrier. I'm sure
6 you understand that. So that's being used effectively in the
7 short-term until the borehole is sealed and then provide
8 additional sealing to enhance the safety case.

9 So I just want to make that point.

10 ZOBACK: I don't know if microbes like smectite, but do
11 you have anything to say about--

12 BOMMER: Well, the only thing I was going to say--this
13 is Paul Bommer on the panel--is that, as Nick already pointed
14 out, the cement really isn't the full seal. There are other
15 materials in here. And I think it's very important to try to
16 fill the borehole up completely with solids; don't leave any
17 fluids in it.

18 FRANKEL: Sue, lady from Pennsylvania.

19 BRANTLEY: Sue Brantley from the Board. I've been
20 debating whether to say anything, because I'm basically
21 confused. And, as the lady from Pennsylvania, I just thought
22 I'd express, you know, this morning with Lynn Orr I kind of
23 see an image where we're going to do some tests for five
24 years, and then we are going to have the possibility of
25 actually putting some waste down in five years. And so I've

1 been trying to understand this plan and where we are. And
2 I'm just going to express the confusion I feel at this point
3 in the afternoon.

4 So one of my other questions was about, aren't you
5 cementing the borehole, because in Pennsylvania we often have
6 to cement our boreholes? Well, I was told the crystalline
7 part of the borehole didn't need to have cement, and then I
8 listen to a panel, hear all about how the borehole should be
9 filled. So I'm confused.

10 And then we've also talked about wireline
11 emplacement versus the drill emplacement and the coiled tube
12 emplacement. And I'm not really understanding why we chose
13 wireline, probably because I didn't understand those trees
14 and the risk analysis, which, you know, I can work to
15 understand. But, nonetheless, what I don't quite see here is
16 how in five years we're going to have answered these
17 questions. So I'm sort of confused.

18 BOMMER: Is there someone from DOE that wants to
19 respond? Andy?

20 GRIFFITH: Sure. Andy Griffith, Department of Energy.
21 Yeah, as far as the field test is concerned, right now it's
22 planned for five years. Clearly, I think, based on this
23 discussion, we've learned a lot, and we'll learn more
24 tomorrow. Whether it stays five years or not in order to
25 answer the important questions on whether we go forward or

1 not, that's yet to be determined. We've got a long way to
2 go. We're just starting.

3 As far as plans for the concept of five-year
4 placement, probably very optimistically at the soonest if
5 everything went perfectly, and all the concerns were
6 addressed over the next five years, that's very optimistic;
7 in DOE environment, I'd say highly unlikely.

8 But, still, you know, we have to plan, we have to
9 consider, okay, if we go fast, how fast can we go? If we
10 have to slow down, how much do we slow down? You know, all
11 these things really have to unfold. And we're providing
12 options for the policy and the decision makers, and that's
13 really the focus. And the next five years is what's really
14 important, I think.

15 FRANKEL: Go ahead, Pat.

16 BRADY: Yeah, this is Pat Brady from Sandia. I would
17 like people to come back to what Fergus Gibb said early on
18 about the required longevity of the seals. Specifically, the
19 seals have to perform long enough so that time elapses for
20 the hypersaline waters to seep back and the thermal pulse to
21 go away. Now, for spent fuel that thermal pulse is ten times
22 the half-life of the strontium and the cesium, so that's 300
23 years. So when we look at the long-term performance
24 requirements of the seals, we're not looking at ten times the
25 half-life of the plutonium and the americium. We're looking

1 at it for the heat-generating isotopes. So it's not tens of
2 thousands of years; it's hundreds of years.

3 And, again, once the reducing conditions and the
4 high salinity comes back in, the seals somewhat become
5 superfluous, because there is no driving force.

6 FRANKEL: Go ahead, Nick.

7 COLLIER: Yes, can I say something else? Nick from the
8 University of Sheffield. I think that was a very good point
9 raised, so I'm not going to call you the lady from--Susan.

10 BOMMER: Why not?

11 COLLIER: Because there are different concepts out
12 there, aren't there? There are different groups and people
13 have different ideas as to the best deep borehole or most
14 appropriate deep borehole disposal concept, so maybe that's
15 the reason for some of the confusion.

16 BRANTLEY: Well, I guess I was getting--this is Sue
17 Brantley again--I was getting at, what is the plan for
18 figuring out, of these various ideas that are out there,
19 which one would work best in the sites that we might choose?
20 So how are we going to choose? How are we going to learn
21 what we need to know to choose? I haven't really heard that
22 plan.

23 GARWIN: Richard Garwin, Panel 7. Regarding the rock
24 melting concept, I think it's only a concept. And I hear
25 that there's going to be loose granular fill, which will be

1 melted, but then there will be a void, you know, a frank void
2 where the void's base of the granules is now consolidated in
3 the rock melting. And I worry about the massive plug--molten
4 rock--which has then had a boundary with the solid rock and
5 now shrinks. So what do we know about a path around the
6 formerly melted rock at the place or in fissures then in the
7 unmelted rock around it?

8 COLLIER: Nick from the University of Sheffield. This
9 is where I don't make myself look stupid by making myself
10 look stupid and ask Fergus Gibb to answer that question,
11 because he is leading that work at the University of
12 Sheffield.

13 FRANKEL: Please, yes.

14 GIBB: Yeah, that's a pretty good question. What
15 happens in the rock melting scenario is that the backfill and
16 the host rock melt; and, of course, it's down the borehole,
17 which is full of water, so you have supercritical fluid,
18 aqueous fluid. And as you see in normal experiments, this
19 rises above the melt. So you would end up with a melt zone
20 which recrystallizes. And between that melt zone and the
21 pressure seal at the top, you have effectively a void in
22 which there's supercritical water. It doesn't matter,
23 because you're going to seal the thing at the bottom, not at
24 the top.

25 And as for the question about the contraction, I

1 mean, I don't believe that that's a problem. This is an
2 issue which we've looked at already. If when you put the
3 heat source down you raise the temperature, most people would
4 think that what will happen is that as it heats up it will
5 cause fracturing and cracking, and as it contracts it'll be
6 worse. But that's not the case, because if you take the
7 analog of natural rock, natural magmatic rocks, any of you
8 geologists will know that if you look at something like a
9 basaltic dike, if you look at the edge of the dike, you've
10 got a lot of cooling cracks, fractures. That's because the
11 cooling--the cracking--sorry--is contractional, but it's
12 dependent on the thermal gradient and the cooling rate. If
13 you look in the center of the same dike, you've got massive
14 rock without any cooling joints.

15 And if we control the cooling rate of the partial
16 melt--and, of course, you have this thermal gradient that
17 goes from ambient temperature into the heated zone--if we
18 control the cooling rate properly, we can recrystallize the
19 rock without causing any cracking.

20 That's what I believe. We've seen that in small-
21 scale experiments. But until we do a large-scale trial, we
22 don't know for sure, but I believe it will work okay.

23 FRANKEL: Okay, thank you.

24 Are you responding to this?

25 VAN OORT: I have a follow-up question.

1 FRANKEL: A follow-up. Go ahead.

2 VAN OORT: Eric van Oort with UT-Austin. So my follow-
3 up question is this: With the metamorphosizing of the rock,
4 we have the heater and its umbilical permanently embedded in
5 the rock. What are the chances of those becoming part of the
6 leak-back?

7 GIBB: Fergus Gibb again. Yes, that's absolutely right.
8 We rescue the umbilical, because it's expensive by cutting it
9 off above the welded zone, but the rest of it's still stuck
10 in there. But it could form a path for escaping fluids. But
11 then it's above a welded seal, so anything has got to get
12 past the weld to get into the part of the zone where the
13 umbilical is. It's sealed solidly across the bottom.

14 FRANKEL: Okay, Mark first and--yeah. This is all on
15 the same topic here, so--

16 M. ZOBACK: Oh, it's not about the melting.

17 FRANKEL: Okay, go ahead.

18 HICKMAN: Sorry, Mark. So I didn't have time to talk
19 about my presentation.

20 FRANKEL: Identify yourself.

21 HICKMAN: Oh, sorry. Steve Hickman, U.S. Geological
22 Survey. There have been laboratory experiments in the '70s
23 and '80s that show when you heat up quartzofeldspathic rocks,
24 the different thermal expansion between quartz and feldspar
25 causes incredibly intense fracturing up through the alpha-

1 beta transition in quartz, which is 570°C. So when you melt
2 a rock, the melt may crystallize as some kind of a
3 crystalline solid, but everything around it, especially if it
4 goes through the alpha-beta transition, will have an
5 incredibly dense network of grain-scale microfractures, and
6 permeability measurements by Barrow and Hansen (phonetic)--I
7 was going to bring a paper down later for them; I brought it
8 with me just in case--shows that you get a
9 3-order-of-magnitude increase in permeability in the
10 thermally-shocked rock even under uniform heating, so no
11 thermal gradients, just everything warms up and cools down
12 uniformly. And it takes a lot of confining pressure to
13 suppress that. You never get rid of it. So it's permanent
14 thermal cracking damage that will surround the melt.

15 So I was suggesting that part of the experiment
16 should be to actually see what you have around such a melt.
17 Do you get contractional strain such as Dick Garwin suggested
18 and also grain-scale microfracturing, which is suggested by
19 all the laboratory and theoretical models I know of for
20 thermal fracturing in quartzofeldspathic rock? So it's a
21 concern that I have about the model.

22 FRANKEL: It seems to need some more work.

23 Mark, go ahead, please.

24 M. ZOBACK: Mark Zoback, Stanford. I actually have a
25 question about perhaps this simplest cartoon we've seen all

1 day, and that is a canister or multiple canisters with cement
2 or perhaps a low-temperature melting material in a uniform
3 annulus around them. We know from trying to cement
4 strainmeters, which are maybe about the same size as one of
5 these canisters, in shallow holes how extraordinarily
6 difficult it is to actually get one of these things cemented
7 into place with a uniform seal all the way around it. Doing
8 that at 5 kilometers is almost unimaginable.

9 We've seen the cement just sort of sitting there
10 waiting for these things to be dropped into them. That's
11 kind of hard to do. We've seen things coming in from the top
12 after all the canisters are in place. That's impossible to
13 do, because you've got mud in there and it needs to go
14 somewhere.

15 So could someone just explain how we get an annulus
16 of anything, whether it's cement, low-temperature melting,
17 lead-something-or-other, bentonite, or whatever? I haven't
18 heard that yet. And we can pull the casing out--we have to
19 pull the casing out in order to do that. That could be
20 problematic. If you can't pull the casing out, you're really
21 cooked. If you cut the casing off at the top of the
22 canisters, you can fill the hole, like Paul suggested, but
23 it's that section of the hole with the canisters that really
24 confuses me.

25 BOMMER: I think he's right.

1 FRANKEL: Nick, that was your cartoon, I think.

2 BOMMER: Yeah, he's jumping on you, Nick.

3 COLLIER: Sorry, that was my cartoon, yeah.

4 FRANKEL: I'm sorry.

5 COLLIER: So the canisters--Nick from the University of
6 Sheffield. The canisters will, as a concept, be equally
7 spaced within the central casing. We have simulated a
8 canister grout flow, so both Option 1 and Option 2, which
9 would be drawings that you were referring to then, I think.
10 We have simulated that in the labs; it was at atmospheric
11 pressure and at temperature and also at a small scale. But
12 we have simulated that in our labs.

13 But yes, it's going to be hard. But it'll be
14 within a--it will not be in drilling mud environment. The
15 borehole will be washed with fresh water before any sort of
16 operation. So that's it and that's that.

17 FRANKEL: I want to have some more conversation, but I
18 do want to say that we will leave time for the public
19 comments. I think only one person has signed up. If you're
20 a member of the public that wants to make a comment or ask a
21 question, please still sign up. But we'll take a few more
22 minutes, if that's okay, on this discussion and--

23 ZOBACK: Can we check and see--is Kevin Kamps still
24 here?

25 LESLIE: He's here, he's here.

1 FRANKEL: Okay. So let's have a little more discussion
2 here, and then we'll make sure to leave time for that point.

3 Please.

4 HARDIN: Ernie Hardin with Sandia. I'm going to respond
5 to what Mark Zoback said. The base case for this is not
6 necessarily to encapsulate emplaced waste packages in a
7 time-sensitive, rigid curing material. The base case is to
8 fill that interval with an emplacement fluid and emplace in
9 the fluid, okay? So this does not become a question critical
10 to the success of borehole disposal. It's an enhancement.

11 So that base case we're talking about would involve
12 fixing the guidance casing to the rock wall, using some
13 degree of cement. Why? Because you have to provide
14 mechanical support to that casing. So envision then some
15 cementing going on in the annulus. And then you emplace a
16 number of packages into the fluid, and then you set a cement
17 plug. So that really is the base case. We're not counting
18 on the impossible.

19 FRANKEL: Okay. Bret.

20 LESLIE: Bret Leslie, Board staff. I'm going to try to
21 tie a few things together. And it's a question for DOE, and
22 they don't need to answer it right now. But one of the
23 things that Wes said was you have to think about both the
24 engineering and the science. And they have to be thought of
25 in the same way.

1 Well, one of the objectives is adequately low
2 permeability. That term has not been defined both for the
3 natural setting or for the seals. And if you're trying to
4 test the feasibility, unless you know what you're measuring
5 to, how do you determine whether you're adequately low
6 permeability?

7 FRANKEL: Anybody want to respond from DOE? That's a
8 good question. Yeah, go ahead.

9 BOMMER: This is Bommer with the panel. I thought there
10 was a standard published for the permeability of the seals,
11 anyway, and it's pretty low. Cement, on its best day, might
12 achieve that. And I suspect Roland would defend bentonite
13 under the correct conditions.

14 COLLIER: Nick from the University of Sheffield. I've
15 got data in front of me here, which demonstrates that the
16 hydraulic conductivity of a likely host rock and hardened
17 paste and bentonite--sorry, I shouldn't say bentonite, should
18 I--smectite and clay are all of the same order of magnitude.

19 FRANKEL: Okay, we'll take one last comment or question.

20 NOVAKOWSKI: My name is Kent Novakowski. I'm from
21 Queens University in Canada. So we talked a lot about
22 permeability, hydraulic conductivity, in the last few
23 minutes. And one of the other parameters that is going to be
24 a governing--or lead to a governing process is porosity,
25 because this environment is likely to be diffusion-dominated

1 once the well wets up again. For example, if we have
2 hydrostatic pressures, the dominant transport mechanism will
3 be diffusion.

4 So I might ask this question then; in fact, Dr.
5 Pusch mentioned this. Bentonite will--or smectite rather--
6 will behave differently than cementitious grout seal will,
7 which will also behave differently than fused rock seal will,
8 and all because of the difference in porosity.

9 So any comment or thoughts on that?

10 FRANKEL: Go ahead.

11 BOMMER: Bommer with the panel. It might be a good
12 thing. Vive la différence might help us. You know, we
13 haven't even discussed the application of asphalts,
14 asphaltenes, other plugging mechanisms. So I think all of
15 these things have got, to a certain extent, work together.

16 NOVAKOWSKI: So we might have orders of magnitude
17 difference in porosity values between materials. And I think
18 that is extremely important if we're looking at transport
19 times around, let's say, a 10- to 15-foot-thick section of
20 sealed borehole.

21 COLLIER: Can I comment on that just quickly? Sorry.
22 Nick from the University of Sheffield again. Yes, I mean,
23 I'm certain that you know a lot more about it than me, but in
24 terms of the--I think the important factor might be the
25 hydraulic conductivity rather than the porosity, because

1 porosity might be closed off. And, of course, it's the
2 interconnection of the porosity surely which allows the
3 pathways.

4 FRANKEL: This has been a really great discussion,
5 really what we envisioned when we thought up this workshop.
6 So I'm going to call it to a close, and let's thank the panel
7 one more time.

8 ZOBACK: Thanks. And as I indicated beginning, we
9 always have time for public comment. And I'd like to call
10 Kevin Kamps up. He signed up for the public comment.

11 KAMPS: Thank you, Dr. Zoback and Chairman Ewing. Thank
12 you, Board members, for a great session. The hour is late--

13 ZOBACK: Can you identify your affiliation as well?

14 KAMPS: Yeah. My name is Kevin Kamps with Beyond
15 Nuclear, where I serve as Radioactive Waste Specialist; and I
16 also serve on the Board of Directors of Don't Waste Michigan,
17 which is the statewide watchdog on nuclear power and
18 radioactive waste. And I'll try to keep it brief. The hour
19 is late. Just a few thoughts.

20 I hope folks can understand public skepticism about
21 a proposal like this. I mean, name the technological
22 disaster or catastrophe, and some of the thoughts that came
23 to my mind today listening to the presentations were books
24 like Charles Perrow's Normal Accidents--from 1999--Living
25 with High-Risk Technologies. Three Mile Island and Chernobyl

1 were case studies in that book.

2 Another book that came to mind--someone mentioned
3 off-normal today--was Nassim Taleb's The Black Swan: The
4 Impact of the Highly Improbable.

5 Speaking on behalf of Don't Waste Michigan, someone
6 mentioned today the potential of on-site disposal. Someone
7 else, another presenter, mentioned remote locations for deep
8 borehole disposal. And I would just point out that in a
9 place like Michigan it's against the law. So it's against
10 the law to dispose of radioactive waste within ten miles of
11 the shores of the Great Lakes. So doing the geometry, I
12 guess, 5 kilometers deep, how close to the shore, there are
13 issues like that. And I think the public aspect of this is
14 very significant.

15 So, for example, in Michigan there is a proposal in
16 Ontario by Ontario Power Generation to create a deep geologic
17 repository only 2,000 feet deep right on the shore of Lake
18 Huron for low- and intermediate-level radioactive waste, but
19 there is also a simultaneous parallel process for high-level
20 radioactive waste disposal in the same vicinity of Ontario
21 right on the lakeshore.

22 And so the response, it's taken some time to
23 evolve, but you now have, long story short, in pretty much
24 the entire congressional delegation of Michigan, bipartisan,
25 opposed to the idea, calls for international joint

1 commission, comprehensive review to take place, so the public
2 aspect.

3 Some other things I just wanted to touch on.
4 Quality assurance was mentioned today, I believe, and it's
5 certainly very significant. So, for example, the containers,
6 we have information from whistleblowers, just to name one
7 example--there are many--the Holtec container used for high-
8 level radioactive waste storage at a third of the reactors in
9 the United States at this point, also certified for
10 transport.

11 So an industry whistleblower, Oscar Shirani of
12 Commonwealth Edison/Exelon, an NRC whistleblower, Dr. Ross
13 Landsman of Region 3 in the Midwest, with very serious
14 questions about the quality assurance or lack thereof on the
15 Holtec containers, to the best of my knowledge, never
16 adequately addressed to this point. And that was some 15
17 years ago, and so many of them loaded since that time. So,
18 of course, QA is a huge issue in here.

19 Another thought that I had about today, it's hard
20 for me and, I think, a lot of people to wrap their head
21 around the Blue Ribbon Commission's finding/recommendation
22 that an independent agency, not the DOE, would be in charge
23 of radioactive waste management in this country. And yet the
24 Department of Energy is still playing a huge role in these
25 discussions. And so that's kind of a hard one for me to

1 figure out today.

2 Another aspect, a remote location versus on-site
3 disposal--and it was mentioned today--consent-based siting.
4 And so when I hear remote location, I mean, it certainly
5 evokes Yucca Mountain, Nevada. The problem is--and I
6 remembered back to the first meeting of the Blue Ribbon
7 Commission in March of 2010, I think it was, where I pointed
8 out to them that day that President Obama, a year earlier in
9 his Women's History Month proclamation, March 2009, named
10 Grace Thorpe as a woman defender of the environment, women
11 leading the way to save planet earth. She was a Sac and Fox
12 Indian on the board of directors of Nuclear Information and
13 Resource Service, who one of her claims to fame was that she
14 defended her community against a centralized interim storage
15 site and then helped 60 others across the country, Native
16 American reservations, to organize against being targeted for
17 these facilities. President Obama honored her for that.

18 And then, ironically enough, Native American
19 reservations were part and parcel a part of the Blue Ribbon
20 Commission final report as still on the target list
21 potentially, so real issues of environmental justice that was
22 just raised by the Western Shoshone Indian Nation at the
23 NRC's Yucca Mountain latest EIS iteration out in Nevada. So
24 that's another problem. On-site problems in a place like
25 Michigan, remote problems when it comes to environmental

1 justice.

2 And I guess the last issue I'll touch on for
3 today--I may have more to say tomorrow--someone, one of the
4 presenters today, mentioned cement being solid and good to go
5 for thousands of years, and I know there's been some back-
6 and-forth about it.

7 But I guess another book that came to mind is a
8 really fascinating one called Concrete Planet: The Strange
9 and Fascinating Story of the World's Most Common Man-Made
10 Material by Robert Courland, just out a few years ago. And
11 he points out--I mean, the Roman concrete was mentioned in
12 one of the presentations--that the magic of concrete was lost
13 for a thousand years during the Dark Ages. And it wasn't
14 until the middle 1700s or late 1700s that it came back to
15 western culture. And one of the problems--it's one of the
16 issues in the book--is the rebar reinforcement in concrete
17 means that these days concrete structures will last for maybe
18 200 years, maybe 50 years, and the Romans would have been
19 horrified. So Hadrian's dome in the Pantheon has lasted
20 2,000 years pretty well. But these days, when you make
21 mistakes in fabrication or a lot of issues that have been
22 brought up today, that's the challenge.

23 And I'm glad that someone mentioned the space
24 shuttle disasters. That's another book that came to mind
25 today was Dr. Ron Kramer at Western Michigan University, The

1 Space Shuttle Challenger Launch Decision. You know, the
2 science has dominated today, which is appropriate, but,
3 unfortunately, just up there in Capitol Hill science often
4 takes a back seat. I think that's what happened at Yucca
5 Mountain, has happened so many times.

6 So, yeah, I'll probably have more to say tomorrow.
7 Thank you.

8 ZOBACK: Thank you very much.

9 Okay, seeing no more requests for public comment, I
10 want to thank Kevin for that input. We appreciate hearing
11 from the public.

12 And I want to thank all of you for sitting here and
13 being so attentive all day long. Your reward now is poster
14 sessions. If you're staying here at the hotel, on your way
15 to the poster sessions, which are across the lobby, you may
16 stop and pick up happy hour free beverages. But please go on
17 over to the poster session.

18 And those of you that really love this room, we're
19 going to have two of the posters in this room to relieve some
20 of the pressure. The posters, I will say, are presentations
21 by DOE, one for each of the panels, presumably addressing the
22 questions that were asked. So in this room will be posters
23 for panels tomorrow, 6 and 7, the final two panels. One is
24 on the efficacy of--

25 SPEAKER: Multi-barriers.

1 ZOBACK: One is on multi-barriers and--what's the other
2 one?--and risk management, risk control.

3 Anyway, you have your choice. If you're staying at
4 the hotel, show your key and you get a free drink.

5 And thank you, and we'll see you again bright and
6 early tomorrow morning. Thanks a lot.

7 (Whereupon, the meeting was adjourned.)

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

C E R T I F I C A T E

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

I certify that the foregoing is a correct transcript of the NWTRB International Workshop on Deep Borehole Disposal of Radioactive Waste held on October 20 and 21, 2015, in Washington, DC, taken from the electronic recording of proceedings in the above-entitled matter.

November 4, 2015 s//Scott Ford

Federal Reporting Service, Inc.
17454 East Asbury Place
Aurora, Colorado 80013
(303) 751-2777